

*Cadillac*

**SRX**

Owner Manual

# 2014 Cadillac SRX Owner Manual

|   |      |   |      |                                    |       |
|---|------|---|------|------------------------------------|-------|
| <b>In Brief</b> .....                     | 1-1  | <b>Storage</b> .....                            | 4-1  | <b>Climate Controls</b> .....      | 8-1   |
| Instrument Panel .....                    | 1-2  | Storage Compartments .....                      | 4-1  | Climate Control Systems .....      | 8-1   |
| Initial Drive Information .....           | 1-4  | Additional Storage Features .....               | 4-3  | Air Vents .....                    | 8-7   |
| Vehicle Features .....                    | 1-14 | Roof Rack System .....                          | 4-11 | Maintenance .....                  | 8-8   |
| Performance and<br>Maintenance .....      | 1-17 | <b>Instruments and Controls</b> .....           | 5-1  | <b>Driving and Operating</b> ..... | 9-1   |
| <b>Keys, Doors, and<br/>Windows</b> ..... | 2-1  | Controls .....                                  | 5-2  | Driving Information .....          | 9-2   |
| Keys and Locks .....                      | 2-1  | Warning Lights, Gauges, and<br>Indicators ..... | 5-8  | Starting and Operating .....       | 9-13  |
| Doors .....                               | 2-11 | Information Displays .....                      | 5-25 | Engine Exhaust .....               | 9-20  |
| Vehicle Security .....                    | 2-15 | Vehicle Messages .....                          | 5-28 | Automatic Transmission .....       | 9-21  |
| Exterior Mirrors .....                    | 2-19 | Vehicle Personalisation .....                   | 5-38 | Drive Systems .....                | 9-25  |
| Interior Mirrors .....                    | 2-21 | <b>Lighting</b> .....                           | 6-1  | Brakes .....                       | 9-26  |
| Windows .....                             | 2-21 | Exterior Lighting .....                         | 6-1  | Ride Control Systems .....         | 9-29  |
| Roof .....                                | 2-24 | Interior Lighting .....                         | 6-9  | Cruise Control .....               | 9-32  |
| <b>Seats and Restraints</b> .....         | 3-1  | Lighting Features .....                         | 6-10 | Driver Assistance Systems .....    | 9-42  |
| Head Restraints .....                     | 3-2  | <b>Infotainment System</b> .....                | 7-1  | Fuel .....                         | 9-54  |
| Front Seats .....                         | 3-3  | Introduction .....                              | 7-1  | Trailer Towing .....               | 9-57  |
| Rear Seats .....                          | 3-9  |   |      | Conversions and Add-Ons .....      | 9-64  |
| Safety Belts .....                        | 3-11 |   |      | <b>Vehicle Care</b> .....          | 10-1  |
| Airbag System .....                       | 3-19 |   |      | General Information .....          | 10-2  |
| Child Restraints .....                    | 3-29 |   |      | Vehicle Checks .....               | 10-3  |
|   |      |   |      | Headlamp Aiming .....              | 10-25 |
|   |      |   |      | Bulb Replacement .....             | 10-25 |
|   |      |   |      | Electrical System .....            | 10-32 |
|   |      |   |      | Wheels and Tyres .....             | 10-40 |

# 2014 Cadillac SRX Owner Manual

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Jump Starting .....                                | 10-70 |
| Towing the Vehicle .....                           | 10-74 |
| Appearance Care .....                              | 10-78 |
| <b>Service and Maintenance</b> ...                 | 11-1  |
| General Information .....                          | 11-1  |
| Scheduled Maintenance .....                        | 11-1  |
| Recommended Fluids,<br>Lubricants, and Parts ..... | 11-5  |
| Maintenance Records .....                          | 11-7  |
| <b>Technical Data</b> .....                        | 12-1  |
| Vehicle Identification .....                       | 12-1  |
| Vehicle Data .....                                 | 12-2  |
| <b>Customer Information</b> .....                  | 13-1  |
| Customer Information .....                         | 13-1  |
| Vehicle Data Recording and<br>Privacy .....        | 13-1  |
| <b>Index</b> .....                                 | i-1   |



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest and Wreath, and SRX are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual.

Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle.


Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

## Using this Manual


To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

## Danger, Warnings, and Cautions


### **Danger**

Text marked  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### **Warning**

Text marked  **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

### **Caution**


Text marked  **Caution** provides information that may indicate a hazard that could result in injury or death. It could also result in possible damage to the vehicle.




A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

### Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

 : This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

 : This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

### Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

 : Airbag Readiness Light


 : Air Conditioning

 : Antilock Brake System (ABS)

 : Audio Steering Wheel Controls

 : Brake System Warning Light

 : Charging System

 : Cruise Control

 : Engine Coolant Temperature

 : Exterior Lamps


 : Fog Lamps

 : Fuel Gauge

 : Fuses

 : Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer

 : Heated Steering Wheel

 : LATCH System Child Restraints

 : Malfunction Indicator Lamp

 : Oil Pressure

 : Outside Power Foldaway Mirrors

 : Power

 : Remote Vehicle Start

 : Safety Belt Reminders

 : Tyre Pressure Monitor

 : Traction Control/StabiliTrak®

 : Windscreen Washer Fluid

## In Brief

### Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel ..... 1-2

### Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information ..... 1-4

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)

System ..... 1-4

Remote Vehicle Start ..... 1-5

Door Locks ..... 1-5

Tailgate ..... 1-6

Windows ..... 1-7

Seat Adjustment ..... 1-7

Memory Features ..... 1-8

Heated and Ventilated

Seats ..... 1-8

Head Restraint Adjustment .... 1-9

Safety Belts ..... 1-9

Mirror Adjustment ..... 1-9

Steering Wheel

Adjustment ..... 1-10

Throttle and Brake Pedal

Adjustment ..... 1-10

Interior Lighting ..... 1-11

Exterior Lighting ..... 1-11

Windscreen Wiper/Washer ... 1-12

Climate Controls ..... 1-13

Transmission ..... 1-14

### Vehicle Features

Steering Wheel Controls .... 1-14

Cruise Control ..... 1-14

Infotainment System ..... 1-15

Driver Information

Center (DIC) ..... 1-15

Forward Collision Alert (FCA)

System ..... 1-15

Lane Departure

Warning (LDW) ..... 1-16

Side Blind Zone

Alert (SBZA) ..... 1-16

Rear Vision

Camera (RVC) ..... 1-16

Ultrasonic Parking Assist .... 1-16

Active Emergency Braking

System ..... 1-16

Power Outlets ..... 1-16

### Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/Electronic

Stability Control ..... 1-17

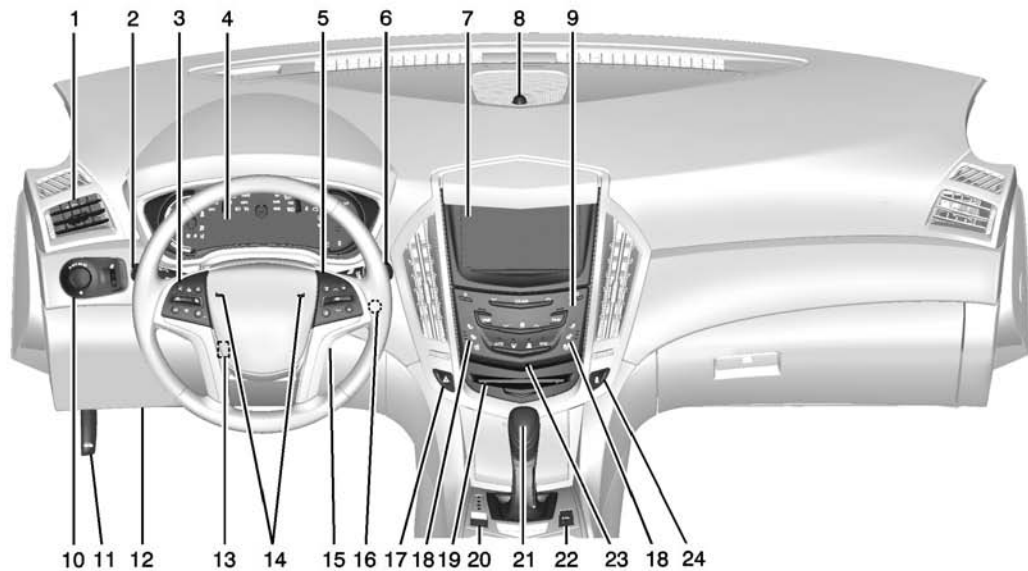
Tyre Pressure Monitor ..... 1-18

Engine Oil Life System ..... 1-18

Driving for Better Fuel

Economy ..... 1-18

## Instrument Panel



1. *Air Vents on page 8-7.*
2. *Indicator Lever. See Indicator and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-7.*
3. *Cruise Control on page 9-32.*  
*Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-34 (If Equipped).*  
*Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-45.*
4. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-9.*
5. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2.*  
*Driver Information Centre (DIC) Controls. See Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25.*
6. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3.*  
*Rear Window Wiper/Washer on page 5-4.*
7. *Infotainment on page 7-1.*
8. *Light Sensor. See Twilight Sentinel on page 6-6.*
9. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1.*  
*Heated and Ventilated Front Seats on page 3-8 (If Equipped).*
10. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1.*  
*Front Fog Lamps on page 6-8.*  
*Rear Fog Lamps on page 6-8.*  
*Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-9.*
11. *Bonnet Release. See Bonnet on page 10-4.*
12. *Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-15.*
13. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2.*
14. *Horn on page 5-3.*
15. *Pedal Adjust Control (Out of View). See Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-13 (If Equipped).*
16. *ENGINE START/STOP Button. See Ignition Positions on page 9-14.*
17. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-7.*
18. *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats on page 3-8 (If Equipped).*
19. *CD Player. See Infotainment on page 7-1.*  
*Blu-Ray® Optical Drive (If Equipped). See Infotainment on page 7-1.*



## 1-4 In Brief

---

20. *Handbrake on page 9-27.*
21. *Shift Lever. See Automatic Transmission on page 9-21.*
22. *Parking Assist. See Driver Assistance Systems on page 9-42.*  
*Lane Departure Warning Button (If Equipped). See Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-51.*
23. *Front Storage on page 4-2 (If Equipped).*
24. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29.*

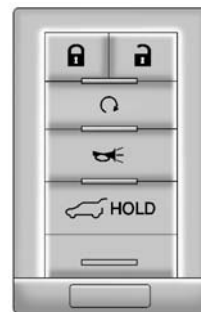
### Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.


For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

### Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter may be used to lock and unlock the doors from up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.





 : Press to lock all doors.


 : Press to unlock the driver door or all doors depending on the vehicle personalisation settings.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalised.

See “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38.*

 : Press and release one time to initiate vehicle locator.

Press and hold  for three seconds to sound the panic alarm.

 **HOLD** : Press and hold to open or close the tailgate.



Press the key release button near the bottom of the transmitter to remove the key. The key can be used for the driver door and the glove box.

See *Keys on page 2-1* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If available, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside of the vehicle.

### Starting the Vehicle


1. Press and release  on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold  for at least four seconds until the indicator lamps flash.

When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

### Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7*.

## Door Locks



### Keyless Access



When the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door, pressing the lock/unlock button on that door handle will lock/unlock the doors. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

## 1-6 In Brief

### Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)

To lock or unlock the doors from the outside, press  or  on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

### Key

To lock or unlock the door, use the key in the driver door. Turn the key anticlockwise once to unlock the driver door; turning the key again will unlock the passenger doors.

### Inside the Vehicle

To unlock a door from the inside, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and a second time to open it.

### Power Door Locks

There is a power door lock switch on the front door panels.

 : Press to lock the doors.

 : Press to unlock the doors.

See *Power Door Locks on page 2-9*.

### Tailgate

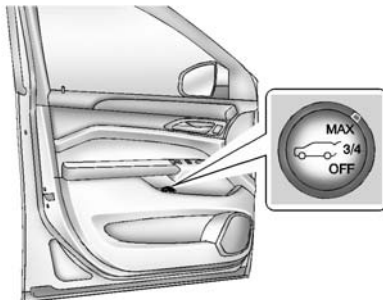
#### Manual Tailgate Operation

For vehicles without Keyless Access, unlock the vehicle before opening the tailgate.

Press the touch pad in the handle of the tailgate, above the number plate, and lift up to open.

Do not press the touch pad while closing the tailgate. This will cause the tailgate to be unlatched.

#### Power Tailgate Operation



On vehicles with a power tailgate, the switch is on the driver door. The vehicle must be in P (Park) to use the power feature. The tail lamps flash when the power tailgate moves.

Choose a power tailgate mode by turning the dial on the switch until the indicator lines up with the desired position. Press the centre of the switch.

The three modes are:

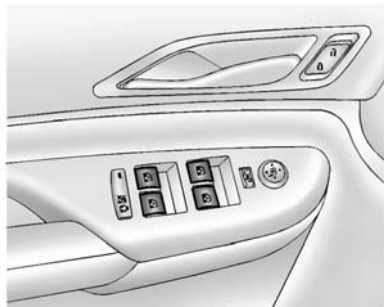
**MAX:** The tailgate opens to the full open height.

**3/4:** The tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be set by the vehicle operator in a range of approximately three-quarters open to full open.

**OFF:** The tailgate only operates manually in this position.


See *Tailgate on page 2-11*.

## Windows




Press or pull the switch part of the way to open or close the window.

Fully press the front of the switch down and release it to express-down the window. Fully pull the switch up and release it to express-up the window.

Press  to activate the window lockout on the rear doors.

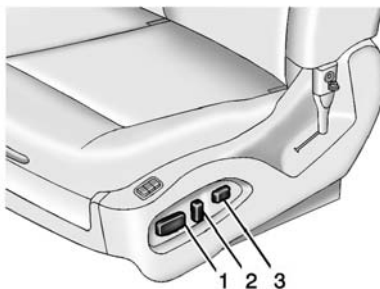
See *Power Windows* on page 2-21.

## Remote Window Operation

If equipped, remote operating windows will open all the windows from outside the vehicle by pressing and holding  on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

See *Power Windows* on page 2-21.

## Seat Adjustment



1. Seat Position Control
2. Seatback Adjustment Control
3. Lumbar Adjustment Control

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control (1) forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control (1) up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the rear of the control (1) up or down.

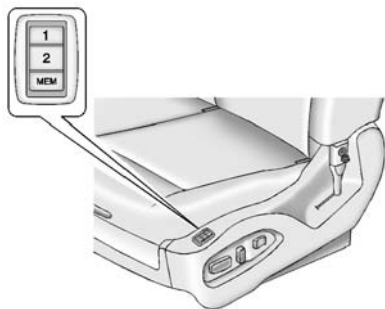
See *Power Seat Adjustment* on page 3-3.

- Raise or recline the seatback by tilting control (2) forward or rearward.

See *Reclining Seat backrests* on page 3-5.

- Increase or decrease the lumbar support by pressing and holding the front or rear of control (3). See *Lumbar Adjustment* on page 3-4.

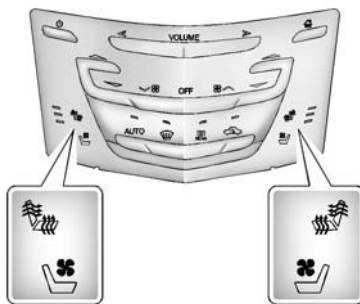
### Memory Features



The “1,” “2,” and MEM buttons on the outboard side of the driver seat are used to manually save and recall the positions of the driver seat, outside mirrors, and adjustable throttle and brake pedal positions.



See *Memory Seats* on page 3-6 and *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.



### Heated and Ventilated Seats



#### Heated and Ventilated Seat Buttons Shown, Heated Seat Buttons Similar

The buttons are near the climate controls on the centre stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press  or  to heat the driver or passenger seat.

Press  or , if available, to ventilate the driver or passenger seat. A ventilated seat has a fan that pulls or pushes air through the seat. The air is not cooled.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the front heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* on page 3-8.

The heated and ventilated front seats can also be programmed to come on during a remote start. See *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

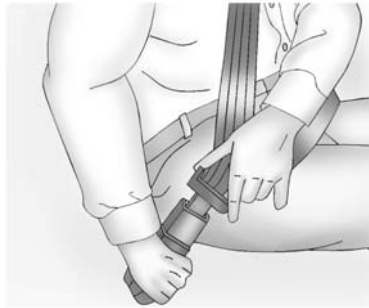
## Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints* on page 3-2 and *Power Seat Adjustment* on page 3-3.

## Safety Belts

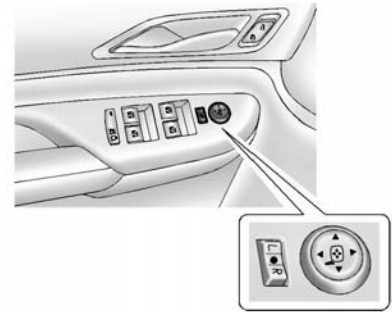


Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly:

- *Safety Belts* on page 3-11.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* on page 3-13.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt* on page 3-14.
- *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40

## Mirror Adjustment

### Exterior



### Manual Folding Mirrors Shown, Power Folding Mirrors Similar

To adjust the mirror:

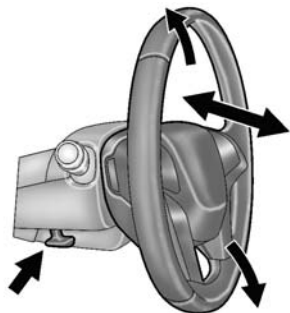
1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move each mirror to the desired position.
3. Return the selector switch to the centre position.

See *Folding Mirrors on page 2-19*.

### Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the driver outside mirror and the inside rearview mirror automatically adjust for the glare of headlamps behind you. See *Automatic Dimming Mirror on page 2-20* or *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror on page 2-21*.

### Steering Wheel Adjustment



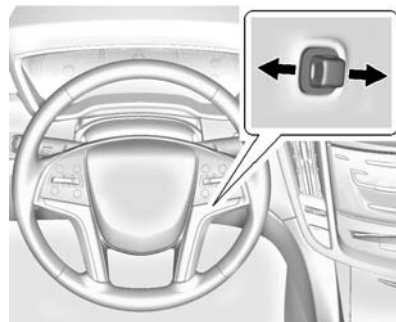
To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

### Throttle and Brake Pedal Adjustment

If the vehicle has this feature, the position of the throttle and brake pedals can be adjusted.



The switch used to adjust the pedals is located on the right side of the steering column, below the wiper stalk. Pull the switch toward you to move the pedals further from the floor, or push the switch away from you to move the pedals closer to the floor.

See *Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal on page 9-13*.

## Interior Lighting


### Dome Lamp


The interior light control is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

 : Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.



 : The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

 : Turns the dome lamp on.

### Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps on the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened.

To manually turn the reading lamps on or off:

- For the overhead console reading lamps, press the  or  next to each lamp.
- For the rear passenger reading lamps, press the lamp lens.


For more information on interior lighting, see *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* on page 6-9.

## Exterior Lighting



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel to the left of the steering column.


There are four positions:


 : Briefly turn to this position to turn the automatic light control off or on again.



**AUTO:** Turns the headlamps on automatically at normal brightness, together with the parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.



## 1-12 In Brief

 : Turns the parking lamps on together with the tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

 : Turns the headlamps on together with the parking lamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

 /  : Press to turn the fog lamps on or off.

See:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*
- *Front Fog Lamps on page 6-8*
- *Rear Fog Lamps on page 6-8*

## Windscreen Wiper/Washer



With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

**HI:** Use for fast wipes.

**LO:** Use for slow wipes.



**INT:** Use for intermittent wipes. To adjust wipe frequency, turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes. If the vehicle has Rainsense™, see the following Rainsense information.

**OFF:** Use to turn the wipers off.


**1X :** For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

## Windscreen Washer

Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers.

## Rainsense™

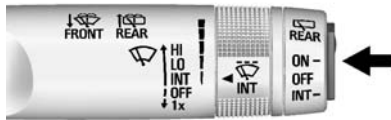
If equipped with Rainsense:

**INT:** Move the windscreen wiper lever to INT. Turn the  INT band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

## Rear Window Wiper/Washer

The rear wiper controls are on the end of the windscreen wiper lever.



**ON:** Press the upper portion of the button for continuous rear window wipes.

**OFF:** The rear wiper turns off when the button is returned to the middle position.

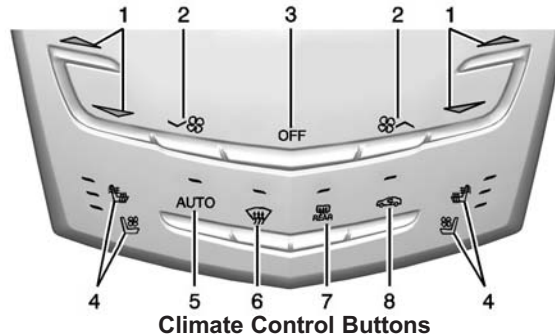
**INT:** Press the lower portion of the button to set a delay between wipes.

**REAR :** Push the windscreen wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3* and *Rear Window Wiper/Washer on page 5-4*.

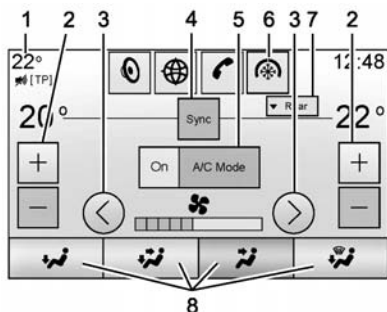
## Climate Controls

The climate control buttons and the touch screen are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls</li> <li>2. Fan Control</li> <li>3. OFF (Fan)</li> <li>4. Driver and Passenger Heated and Ventilated Seats (If Equipped)</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. AUTO (Automatic Operation)</li> <li>6. Defrost</li> <li>7. Rear Window Demister</li> <li>8. Recirculation</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## 1-14 In Brief



### Climate Touch Screen Controls

1. Outside Temperature Display
2. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)
5. AC Mode (Air Conditioning)
6. Climate Control Selection (Application Tray Button)

7. Rear (Rear Climate Control Touch Screen)

8. Air Delivery Mode Control

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* and *Rear Climate Control System on page 8-6* (If Equipped).

## Transmission

### Driver Shift Control (DSC)

DSC allows you to shift an automatic transmission similar to a manual gearbox. To use the DSC feature:

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive) to Sport Mode.
2. To enter M (Manual Mode), press the shift lever forward (+) to upshift or rearward (-) to downshift.

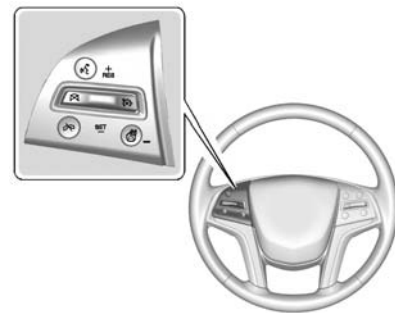
See *Manual Mode on page 9-23*.


## Vehicle Features

### Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.

### Cruise Control



 : Press to turn the system on and off. An indicator appears in the instrument cluster when turned on.

**+RES:** Move the control up briefly to resume to a previously set speed or to increase vehicle speed if the cruise control is already activated.

**SET-:** Move the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control or to decrease vehicle speed if the cruise control is already activated.

**⊗:** Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

See *Cruise Control* on page 9-32 or *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-34 (if equipped).

## Infotainment System

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings and downloadable applications (if equipped).

## Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.



**△ or ∇:** Move SEL up or down to go to the previous or next selection.

**< or >:** Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL:** Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.


See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

## Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, FCA may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a green indicator when a vehicle is detected directly ahead. This indicator displays amber if you follow a vehicle much too closely. It also provides a flashing red alert on the windscreen and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat, when approaching a vehicle too quickly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-45.

## Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW is intended to help avoid unintentional lane departures at speeds of 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater. LDW uses a camera sensor to detect the lane markings. The LDW indicator, , appears green if a lane marking is detected. If the vehicle departs the lane, the indicator will change to amber and flash. In addition, beeps will sound, or the driver seat will pulse.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* on page 9-51.

## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, SBZA will detect vehicles in the next lane over in the vehicle's side blind zone area. When this happens, the SBZA display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* on page 9-50.

## Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

If equipped, RVC displays a view of the area behind the vehicle, on the centre stack display, when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* on page 9-43.

## Ultrasonic Parking Assist

If equipped, Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). URPA may display a warning triangle on the Rear Vision Camera screen and a graphic on the instrument cluster to provide the object distance. In addition, multiple beeps or seat pulses may occur if very close to an object.

The vehicle may also have the Front Parking Assist system.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* on page 9-43.

## Active Emergency Braking System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the Active Emergency Braking System, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) and the Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System. These systems can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle to help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes.

See *Active Emergency Braking System* on page 9-48.

## Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle may have up to five accessory power outlets.

The accessory power outlets are:

- Below the climate control system inside the front storage bin.
- Inside the centre floor console.
- On the rear of the centre floor console. For vehicles with a rear climate control system, there will be two accessory power outlets on the rear of the centre floor console.
- In the rear cargo area.

These are powered while the vehicle is in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY mode, or until the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of turning off the vehicle.

The power outlet located in the rear cargo area is powered at all times.



See *Power Outlets on page 5-6*.









## Performance and Maintenance

### Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically when the vehicle is started.

The StabiliTrak system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system turns on automatically when the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release  on the centre stack.  illuminates in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

- Press and release  again to turn traction control back on.  goes out in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.
- To turn off both Traction Control and StabiliTrak, press and hold  on the centre stack, until  and  illuminate in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.
- Press  again to turn on both systems.  and  go out in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).



The low tyre pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tyres. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-8. The warning light will remain on until the tyre pressure is corrected.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the

tyre pressures are getting low and the tyres need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tyre maintenance. Maintain the correct tyre pressures.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System* on page 10-43.

## Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

See "Oil Life" under *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25 for information on the engine oil life monitor.

## Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tyres properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.

- Replace the vehicle's tyres with the same TPC Spec number moulded into the tyre's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.





# Keys, Doors, and Windows

## Keys and Locks

- Keys ..... 2-1
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ..... 2-2
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation ..... 2-3
- Remote Vehicle Start ..... 2-7
- Door Locks ..... 2-8
- Power Door Locks ..... 2-9
- Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
- Automatic Door Locks ..... 2-10
- Lockout Protection ..... 2-10
- Safety Locks ..... 2-10

## Doors

- Tailgate ..... 2-11

## Vehicle Security

- Vehicle Security ..... 2-15
- Vehicle Alarm System ..... 2-15
- Anti-theft Locking System ..... 2-17
- Immobiliser ..... 2-17
- Immobiliser Operation ..... 2-18

## Exterior Mirrors

- Convex Mirrors ..... 2-19
- Power Mirrors ..... 2-19
- Folding Mirrors ..... 2-19
- Heated Mirrors ..... 2-20
- Automatic Dimming Mirror ... 2-20
- Reverse Tilt Mirrors ..... 2-20

## Interior Mirrors

- Interior Rearview Mirrors ..... 2-21
- Manual Rearview Mirror ..... 2-21
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror ..... 2-21

## Windows

- Windows ..... 2-21
- Power Windows ..... 2-21
- Sun Visors ..... 2-24

## Roof

- Sunroof ..... 2-24

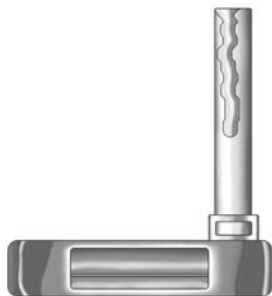
# Keys and Locks

## Keys

 **Warning**

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.

## 2-2 Keys, Doors, and Windows



This key, located inside the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, is used for the driver door and glove box.



To remove the key, press the button near the bottom of the transmitter, and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

If it becomes difficult to turn the key, inspect the key blade for debris.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

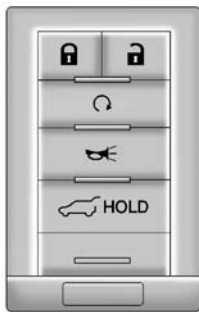
If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

RKE transmitter functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.



### With Remote Start and Power Tailgate Shown, Without Similar

**Ⓛ (Lock):** Press to lock all doors. The indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate locking,

see “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

When the doors are locked the fuel door will also be locked.

If the driver door is open when **Ⓛ** is pressed, all doors lock except the driver door, if enabled through the vehicle personalisation. If the passenger door is open when **Ⓛ** is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing **Ⓛ** may also arm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-15*.

Pressing **Ⓛ** will also lock the fuel door.

**Ⓛ (Unlock):** Press to unlock the driver door or all doors, see “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*. When remotely unlocking the vehicle at night the fog lamps and reverse lamps will come on for about 20 seconds to light your approach to the vehicle.

The indicators may flash to indicate unlocking. See “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

Memory seat positions may be recalled when unlocking the vehicle. See “Auto Memory Recall” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38* for more information.




Pressing **Ⓛ** will disarm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-15*.


On some models, pressing and holding **Ⓛ** will open all of the windows.

Pressing **Ⓛ** will also unlock the fuel door.

**Ⓛ (Remote Start):** For vehicles with this feature, press and release **Ⓛ** and then immediately press and hold **Ⓛ** for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* for additional information.

## 2-4 Keys, Doors, and Windows

 (Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm): Press and release one time to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold  for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the indicators flash for 30 seconds, or until  is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

 <sup>HOLD</sup> (Remote Tailgate Release): Press and hold to open or close the power tailgate.

### Keyless Access Operation

With the Keyless Access system, you can lock and unlock the doors and access the hatch without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter should be within 1 m (3 ft) of the door or hatch being opened.

The Keyless Access can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

### Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.



### Passenger Shown, Driver Similar

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

### **Keyless Unlocking/Locking from Passenger Doors**

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on that door handle will unlock all doors.



Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

### **Passive Locking**

If equipped with Keyless Access, this feature will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed, if the vehicle is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed from the interior or none remain in the interior. The fuel door will also lock at this time.

### **Temporary Disable Passive Locking Feature**

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding  on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until  on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is switched on.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start" under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

### **Keyless Tailgate Opening**

Press the touch pad on the tailgate handle to open the tailgate if the keyless entry transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft).

### **Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle**

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See your dealer to program transmitters to this vehicle.

### **Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery**

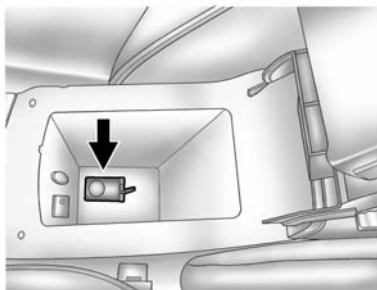
When trying to start the vehicle, if the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display NO REMOTE DETECTED or NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED. PLACE KEY IN TRANSMITTER POCKET. THEN START YOUR VEHICLE. The

## 2-6 Keys, Doors, and Windows

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the centre console storage area and the storage tray.



2. Place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket.

3. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

### Battery Replacement

#### Warning

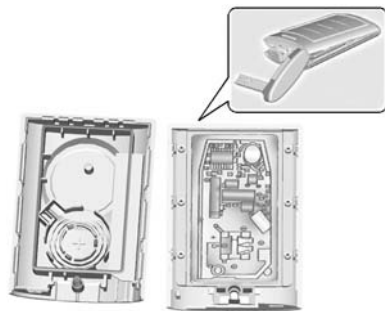
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

#### Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.

1. Press the button near the bottom of the transmitter and pull the key out.




2. Use the oval base of the key blade to separate the two halves of the transmitter.
3. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.

4. Insert the new battery on the back housing, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Align the key release button and snap the transmitter back together.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If available, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside of the vehicle.

 **(Remote Vehicle Start):** This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.


The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear fog indicator light does not come on during remote start.


If the vehicle has heated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* on page 3-8

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* on page 2-2 for additional information.

### Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press and release  on the RKE transmitter.

2. Immediately press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the indicator lamps flash. The indicators flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

During the remote start the doors will be locked and the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.

The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done or the ignition is put in ON/RUN/START.

3. Press the brake pedal and select the ON/RUN/START ignition mode to drive the vehicle.

### Extending Engine Run Time

The engine run time can also be extended by another 10-minutes, if during the first 10 minutes Steps 1–2 are repeated while the engine is still running. This provides a total of 20 minutes.

The remote start can only be extended once.



## 2-8 Keys, Doors, and Windows


When the remote start is extended, the second 10-minute period is added on to the first 10 minutes for a total of 20 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a remote start with an extension, are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be changed to ON/RUN/START and then back to OFF before the remote start procedure can be used again.

### Shutting the Engine Off After a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

### Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

## Door Locks



### Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when slowing or stopping the vehicle. Lock the doors to help prevent this from happening.

**Keyless Access**



When the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door, pressing the lock/unlock button on that door handle

will lock/unlock the doors. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-3.

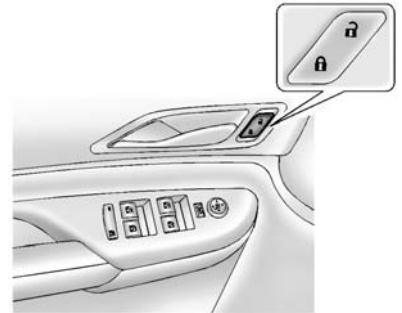
**Key**

To lock or unlock the door, use the key in the driver door. Turn the key anticlockwise once to unlock the driver door; turning the key again will unlock the passenger doors.

**Inside the Vehicle**

To unlock a door from the inside, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and a second time to open it.

**Power Door Locks**




**🔒 (Lock):** Press to lock the doors.

**🔓 (Unlock):** Press to unlock the doors.



**Delayed Locking**

This feature delays the locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

## 2-10 Keys, Doors, and Windows

When  is pressed on the power door lock switch while the door is open, a chime will sound three times indicating delayed locking is active.

The doors will lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before that time, the five-second timer will reset when all doors are closed again.

Press  on the door lock switch or press  on the RKE transmitter to lock doors immediately.

This feature can also be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

### Automatic Door Locks



The doors will lock automatically when all doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park). The doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is stopped and the shift lever is moved into P (Park).

Use the manual or power door locks to unlock the doors if someone needs to exit and to lock the doors again.

The power door locks can be programmed through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

### Lockout Protection

Lockout protection decreases the chances that the keys may be accidentally locked in the vehicle.

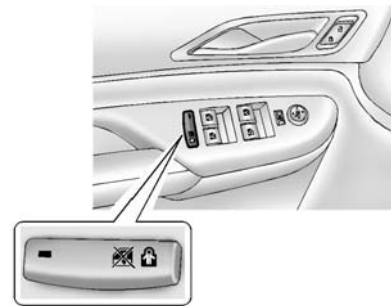
When door locking is requested by pressing  on the front door panels or the RKE transmitter and the driver door is open, all doors will lock and the driver door will immediately unlock. The driver door must be closed when  is pressed for all doors to remain locked.



This feature can be programmed to provide the lockout protection feature only when the ignition mode is ACC/ACCESSORY, or ON/RUN/

START. See “Power Door Locks” in *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.



### Safety Locks

The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.



Press   to activate the safety locks. The indicator light comes on when activated.

The rear door power windows are also disabled. See *Power Windows on page 2-21*.

Press   again to deactivate the safety locks and power windows.

If a rear door handle is being pulled when the safety lock is deactivated, that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.

## Doors

### Tailgate

#### Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the tailgate or boot/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the boot/hatch or tailgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the tailgate or boot/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power tailgate, disable the power tailgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-20.

#### Caution

To avoid damage to the tailgate or tailgate glass, make sure the area above and behind the tailgate is clear before opening it.

## 2-12 Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Manual Tailgate

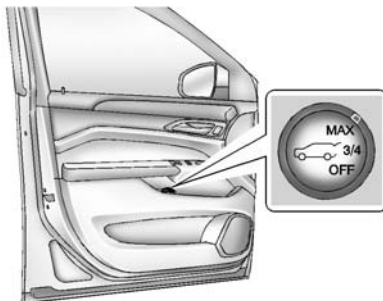
For vehicles without Keyless Access, unlock the vehicle before opening the tailgate.

Press the touch pad in the handle of the tailgate, above the license plate, and lift up to open.

Do not press the touch pad while closing the tailgate. This will cause the tailgate to be unlatched.

Always close the tailgate before driving.

### Power Liftgate



On vehicles with a power tailgate, the switch is on the driver door. The vehicle must be in P (Park) to use the power feature. The tail lamps flash when the power tailgate moves.

### Warning

You, or others, could be injured if caught in the path of the power tailgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the tailgate as it is opening and closing.

Choose the power tailgate mode by turning the dial on the switch until the indicator lines up with the desired position. Press the centre of the switch.

The three modes are:

**MAX:** The tailgate opens to the full open height.



**3/4:** The tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be set by the vehicle operator in a range of approximately three-quarters open to full open. Use this setting to prevent the tailgate from opening into overhead obstructions such as a garage door or roof mounted

cargo during power operation. The tailgate can still be manually opened all the way.

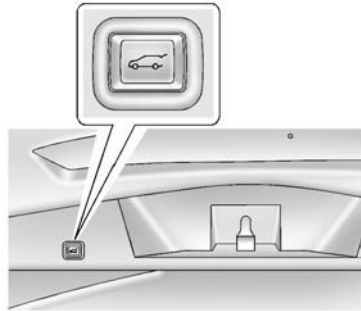
**OFF:** The tailgate only operates manually in this position.


Manual operation of a tailgate that also has power operation requires more effort than with a standard manual tailgate.

In either the MAX or the 3/4 mode, the tailgate can be power opened and closed by:

- Pressing  **HOLD** on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter until the tailgate starts moving. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-3.
- Pressing  on the centre of the mode switch on the driver door, with the driver door unlocked.

- Pressing the touch pad button on the tailgate outside handle, with all doors unlocked, to open the tailgate.



Press and release  on the tailgate next to the latch to close the tailgate.

Pressing any tailgate button, or the touch pad button while the tailgate is moving, stops it. Pressing the button or pressing and holding the RKE switch again reverses the direction. There is a minimum distance that the power tailgate

must already be open for the system to hold it open. If movement is stopped below that minimum, the tailgate closes.

Do not force the tailgate open or closed during a power cycle.

The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled under extreme temperatures or low battery conditions. If this occurs, the tailgate can still be operated manually.

If you shift the transmission out of P (Park) while the power function is in progress, the tailgate power function will continue to completion. If you shift the transmission out of P (Park) and accelerate before the power tailgate latch is closed, the tailgate may reverse to the open position. Cargo could fall out of the vehicle. Always make sure the power tailgate is closed and latched before you drive away.

If you power open the tailgate and the tailgate support struts have lost pressure, the indicators flash and a chime sounds. The tailgate stays

## 2-14 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---

open temporarily, then slowly closes. See your dealer for service before using the tailgate.

### Obstacle Detection Features

If the tailgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, a warning chime will sound and the tailgate will automatically reverse direction to the full closed or open position. After removing the obstruction, the power tailgate operation can be used again. If the tailgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate. After removing the obstructions, the tailgate will resume normal power operation.

The vehicle has pinch sensors located on the side edges of the tailgate. If an object is caught between the tailgate and the body and presses against this sensor, the tailgate will reverse direction and

open fully. The tailgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually.

### Setting the Power Tailgate 3/4 Mode

To change the tailgate stop position:

1. Turn the tailgate switch to the MAX or 3/4 mode position and power open the tailgate.
2. Stop the tailgate movement at the desired height by pressing any tailgate switch. Manually adjust the tailgate position if required.
3. Press and hold the button on the tailgate next to the latch until the indicators flash and a beep sounds to indicate that the new setting is recorded.

When power opened with the 3/4 mode selected, the tailgate stops at the new set position.

If you do not receive the audible and visual feedback when setting the intermediate stop position, you are

attempting to set the height below the 3/4 open height minimum (approximately 1.52 m or 5 ft). The tailgate cannot be set below that minimum and the new setting will not be recorded.

### Manual Operation of Power Tailgate

To change the tailgate to manual operation, turn the mode switch to the OFF position.

With the power tailgate disabled and all of the doors unlocked, the tailgate can be manually opened and closed. The effort required to operate a power tailgate is greater than the effort required to operate a non-power tailgate.

To open the tailgate, press the touch pad on the handle on the outside of the tailgate, and lift the gate open. To close the tailgate, use the pull cup to lower the tailgate and close. With the power tailgate disabled, the tailgate electric latch will still power

latch once contact is made with the striker. Always close the tailgate before driving.

If the RKE button is pressed while power operation is disabled, the indicators flash and the tailgate will not move.

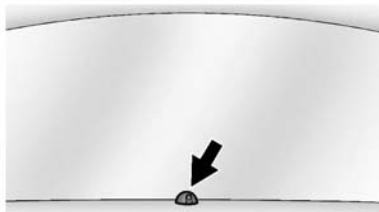
The tailgate has an electric latch. If the battery is disconnected or has low voltage, the tailgate will not open. The tailgate will resume operation when the battery is reconnected and charged.

## Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

## Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windscreen, indicates the status of the system.



**Off:** Alarm system is Disarmed.

**On Solid:** Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

**Fast Flash:** Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the hood, or the tailgate is open.

**Slow Flash:** Alarm system is armed.

## Arming the Alarm System


1. Close the tailgate and the hood. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
  - Use the RKE transmitter.
  - Use the Keyless Access system.
  - With a door open, press  on the interior of the door.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing  on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.



## 2-16 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing  on the RKE transmitter during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the tailgate, or the hood is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the indicators flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

### Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press  on the RKE transmitter.


- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

### How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If  is pressed and the horn chirps three times, the alarm was activated while the alarm system was armed.

If the alarm system has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC. See *Security Messages on page 5-36*.

### Power Sounder Inclination Sensor, and Intrusion Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system also has an inclination sensor and intrusion sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is different from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm when the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.


The intrusion sensor monitors the vehicle interior, and can set off the alarm if it senses an unauthorised entry into the vehicle's interior. Do not allow passengers or pets to remain in the vehicle when the intrusion sensor is activated.

Before arming the theft-deterrent system and activating the intrusion sensor:

- Make sure all doors and windows are completely closed.
- Secure any loose items such as a sunvisors.
- Make sure there are no obstructions blocking the sensors in the front overhead console.


### Inclination, and Intrusion Sensors Disable Switch

It is recommended that the inclination and intrusion sensors be deactivated if pets are left in the vehicle or the vehicle is being transported.


With the vehicle turned off, press  in the overhead console. The indicator light will come on momentarily, indicating that the sensor has been disabled for the next alarm system arming cycle.

### Anti-theft Locking System

The vehicle is equipped with a deadbolt locking feature in addition to the standard door locks.


If the vehicle has the keyless access system, the deadbolt is engaged whenever you press  on the keyless access transmitter twice within five seconds.

If the vehicle does not have keyless access, use either the removable key or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock or unlock the doors and operate the deadbolt.

- Hold the removable key in the lock position for a few seconds or quickly turn the key twice in the lock cylinder to secure the doors with the deadbolt.
- Press  on the RKE transmitter once to lock all the doors. Pressing the button again within three seconds will secure the deadbolt.

When the doors are secured with the deadbolt, the manual door lock controls will not unlock the doors.

Also, if the theft-deterrent system is armed, the doors cannot be unlocked using the power door lock controls.

Press  on the transmitter once to open the deadbolt and unlock the driver door. Pressing the button again within three seconds will unlock all the doors.

If the vehicle does not have keyless access, unlocking the driver door from the outside with the removable key disengages the deadbolt for all doors. However, only the driver door will be unlocked.

You must unlock the passenger doors manually or with the power door locks.

### Immobiliser

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

## 2-18 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---

### Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilisation system is disarmed when the pushbutton start is activated to enter the ACC/ACCESSORY mode or the ON/RUN/START mode and a valid transmitter is present in the vehicle.



The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more RKE transmitters matched to an immobiliser control unit in your vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, OFF), and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the centre console. See “NO REMOTE DETECTED” under *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-32*.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other transmitter, your vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new RKE transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

It is possible for the immobiliser system to learn new or replacement RKE transmitters. Up to eight transmitters can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see “Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

## Exterior Mirrors

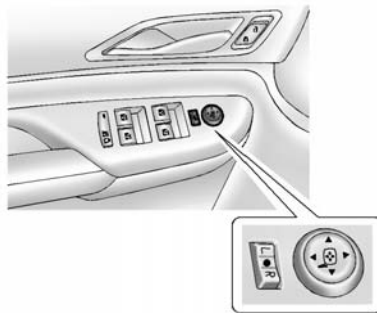
### Convex Mirrors

#### Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

### Power Mirrors



#### Manual Folding Mirrors Shown, Power Folding Similar

To adjust the mirror:

1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move each mirror in the desired direction.
3. Return the selector switch to the centre position.

### Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

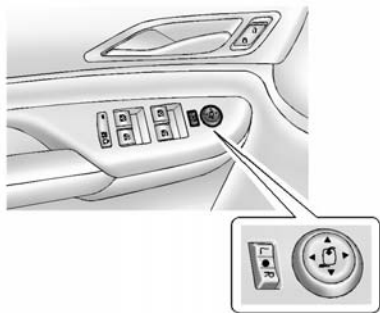
The vehicle may have side blind zone alert. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* on page 9-50.

### Folding Mirrors


#### Manual Folding Mirrors

If equipped, manually fold the mirrors inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

### Power Folding Mirrors



If equipped, to fold the mirrors:

1. With the selector switch in the  position, press the down arrow on the control pad. Both mirrors will automatically fold.
2. Pressing the down arrow again will return the mirrors to their original position.

### Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors

Reset the power folding mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors do not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position.

A noise may be heard during the resetting of the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

### Heated Mirrors

 (Rear Window Demister):

Press to heat the mirrors.

See “Rear Window Demister” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1.*

### Automatic Dimming Mirror

If the vehicle has the automatic dimming mirror, the driver outside mirror automatically adjusts for the glare of headlamps behind you.

### Reverse Tilt Mirrors

If the vehicle is equipped with memory mirrors, there is an option to have the mirrors tilt down, when in R (Reverse), to more easily see the ground near the vehicle.

When the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse), both the driver and passenger mirrors will tilt downward. They will return to their previous position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), the ignition is turned to OFF, or the vehicle is left in R (Reverse) for an extended period of time.

This feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38.*

## Interior Mirrors

### Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind your vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

### Manual Rearview Mirror

Push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it rearward for nighttime use to avoid glare of the headlamps from behind.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

## Windows

### Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.



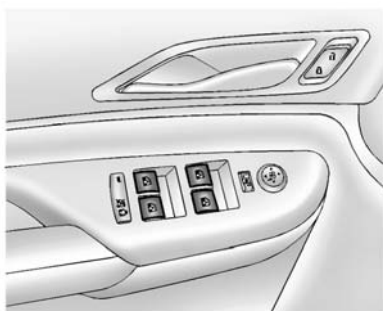
The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

## Power Windows

### Warning

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys on page 2-1*.

## 2-22 Keys, Doors, and Windows



The power windows:

- Can be operated with the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START.
- Can be operated within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 9-18.
- Will stop operation when any door is opened.

Press or pull the switch part of the way to open or close the window.

### Express-Down/Up Windows

Windows that have the express-down/up feature allow the windows to be lowered and raised fully without holding the window switch. Press the window switch fully and release it to activate the express-down feature. Pull the window switch fully up and release it to activate the express-up feature. The express mode can be cancelled at any time by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

### Programming the Power Windows

Programming the power windows may be necessary if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected or discharged.

If the window will not express up after power has been restored and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre:

1. Close all doors.

2. Place the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START.
3. From any partial open position, close the window and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.

### Obstacle Detection Feature

The Obstacle Detection Feature is part of the express-up feature and is active:

- In the middle and upper portions of the window opening.
- During window up movements.
- In ignition OFF during all window up movements and during express-up window movements in ignition ON/RUN/START.

If there is something blocking the window during automatic closing, the window will reverse direction for a short distance. Weather conditions such as extreme cold and/or ice may cause the window to


auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation once the object or condition is removed.

If conditions prevent the window from closing and the window continues to auto-reverse, it is possible to close the window with the ignition in ON/RUN/START by holding the window switch in the partially or fully pulled up position. Release of the switch from the partially pulled up position will cause the window to stop. Release of the switch from the fully pulled up position will activate the express-up and related obstacle detection features.

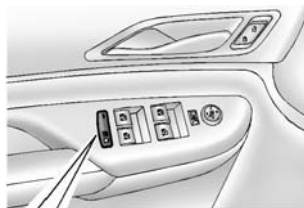
### Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within a short time, the window operation is disabled for a short time.


### Remote Window Operation

If equipped, the remote operating windows will open all the windows from outside the vehicle by pressing and holding  on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.


### Window Lockout



This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press  to activate the rear window lockout, the indicator light in the switch illuminates.

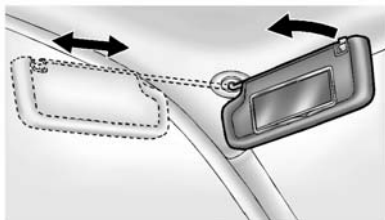
The rear door safety locks are also enabled. See *Safety Locks on page 2-10*.

Press  again to deactivate the rear window lockout.

If an inside rear door handle is being pulled at the same time a safety lock is deactivated, only that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.



### Sun Visors



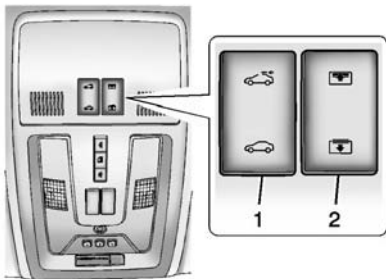
Pull the sun visor down to block glare. If equipped, detach the sun visor from the centre mount to pivot to the side window or to extend along the rod.

### Roof

#### Sunroof

On vehicles with a sunroof, the switches are on the overhead console.

The sunroof only operates when the ignition is in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Ignition Positions* on page 9-14 and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 9-18.



1. Sunroof Switch

#### 2. Sunshade Switch

##### Sunroof Switch

**Vent:** To vent the sunroof, press the rear of the sunroof switch (1) to the first detent and release, the sunroof will open to the vent position.

**Open/Close:** To open or close the sunroof, press the front or rear of the sunroof switch (1) to the first detent and hold, to open or close the sunroof to a desired position.

**Comfort Stop:** The sunroof has a comfort stop feature that stops the sunroof from opening to the full-open position. Press the rear of the sunroof switch (1) to the second detent and release to open the sunroof to the comfort open position. Press and release the rear of the sunroof switch (1) again to fully open the sunroof. Press the front of the sunroof switch (1) to the second detent and release, to express close the sunroof.

### Sunshade Switch

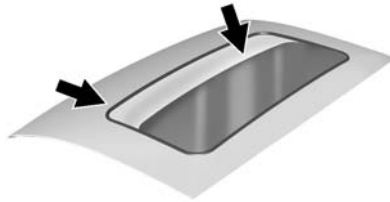
**Open/Close:** To open or close the sunshade, press the front or back of the sunshade switch (2) to the first detent and hold, to open or close the sunshade to a desired position.

**Express Open/Express Close:** To express open or close the sunshade, press the sunshade switch (2) to the second detent and release.

Fully close the sunroof before fully closing the sunshade.

### Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof when it is closing, the anti-pinch feature detects the object and stops the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof then returns to the full-open position.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.



## Seats and Restraints

### Head Restraints

Head Restraints ..... 3-2

### Front Seats

Power Seat Adjustment ..... 3-3

Lumbar Adjustment ..... 3-4

Thigh Support Adjustment .... 3-4

Reclining Seat Backrests .... 3-5

Memory Seats ..... 3-6

Heated and Ventilated Front  
Seats ..... 3-8

### Rear Seats

Rear Seats ..... 3-9

Heated Rear Seats ..... 3-10

Rear Seat  
Pass-Through Door ..... 3-11

### Safety Belts

Safety Belts ..... 3-11

How to Wear Safety Belts

Properly ..... 3-13

Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 3-14

Safety Belt Use During  
Pregnancy ..... 3-17

Safety Belt Extender ..... 3-17

Safety System Check ..... 3-17

Safety Belt Care ..... 3-18

Replacing Safety Belt System  
Parts after a Crash ..... 3-18

### Airbag System

Airbag System ..... 3-19

Where Are the Airbags? .... 3-20

When Should an Airbag  
Inflate? ..... 3-22

What Makes an Airbag  
Inflate? ..... 3-23

How Does an Airbag  
Restrain? ..... 3-23

What Will You See after an  
Airbag Inflates? ..... 3-23

Airbag On-Off Switch ..... 3-25

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped  
Vehicle ..... 3-27

Adding Equipment to the  
Airbag-Equipped Vehicle ... 3-27

Airbag System Check ..... 3-28

Replacing Airbag System  
Parts after a Crash ..... 3-28

### Child Restraints

Older Children ..... 3-29

Infants and Young  
Children ..... 3-31

Child Restraint Systems .... 3-33

Where to Put the Restraint ... 3-34

ISOFIX Child Restraint  
Systems ..... 3-40

Securing Child Restraints  
(Rear Seat) ..... 3-41

Securing Child Restraints  
(Front Passenger Seat) .... 3-42

### Head Restraints

#### Warning

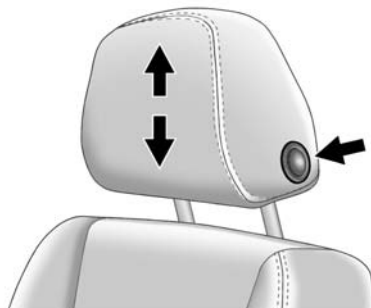
With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

#### Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



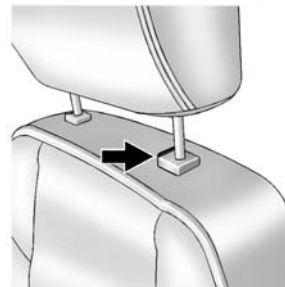
The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint, and pull up or push the

head restraint down, and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not designed to be removed.

#### Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seat backrest, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.



The vehicle's rear seat has an adjustable headrest in the centre seating position that can be adjusted the same way as the outboard head restraints.

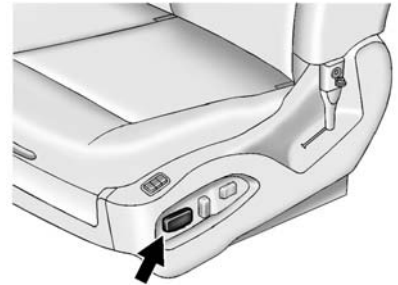
The rear seat head restraints and headrest are not designed to be removed.

## Front Seats

### Power Seat Adjustment

#### Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



## 3-4 Seats and Restraints

---

To adjust a power seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.

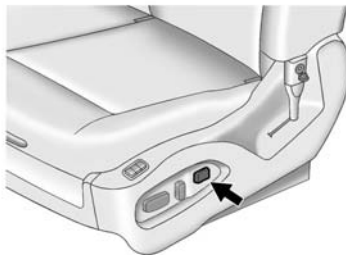
To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.

To adjust the lumbar support, see *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-4*.

Some vehicles are equipped with a feature that activates a vibration in the driver seat to help the driver avoid crashes. See *Driver Assistance Systems on page 9-42*.

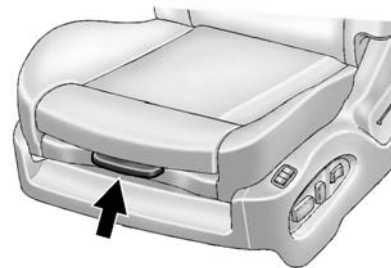
### Lumbar Adjustment

#### Power Lumbar



Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support. Release the control when the seatback reaches the desired level of lumbar support.

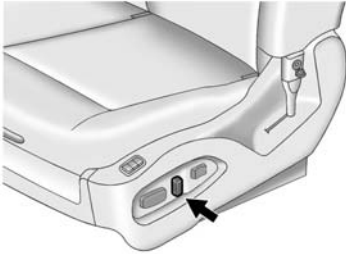
### Thigh Support Adjustment



Adjust the manual leg extension by pulling up on the lever, and then pulling or pushing on the support to lengthen or shorten it. Release the lever to lock it in place.

## Reclining Seat Backrests

### Power Reclining Seatbacks



To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

### Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

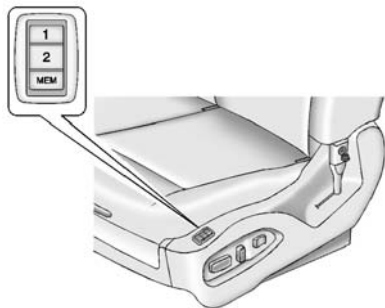
For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.



Do not have a backrest reclined if the vehicle is moving.



### Memory Seats



If equipped, the “1,” “2,” and MEM buttons on the outboard side of the driver seat are used to manually save and recall the positions of the driver seat, outside mirrors, and adjustable throttle and brake pedal positions.

#### Storing Memory Positions

To save positions to the “1” and “2” buttons:

1. Adjust the driver seat, seatback recliner, both outside mirrors, and adjustable pedals to the desired driving positions.
2. Press and hold MEM (Memory) and “1” at the same time until a beep sounds.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for a second driver using “2.”

#### Manually Recalling Memory Positions

If the vehicle is off, or in ON/RUN/START but not in P (Park), press and hold “1” or “2” to manually recall the previously stored memory positions. Releasing “1” or “2” before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

If the vehicle is in ON/RUN/START and in P (Park), press and release “1” or “2” to manually recall the previously stored memory positions.

Placing the ignition in OFF before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.



If something has blocked the driver seat and/or the adjustable pedals while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by pressing the appropriate memory button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

#### Automatically Recalling Memory Positions (Auto Memory Recall)

The Auto (Automatic) Memory Recall feature automatically recalls the current driver’s previously stored “1” or “2” position when entering the vehicle.

When the Auto Memory Recall feature is enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu, memory “1” or “2” positions are recalled in the following ways:

To activate the recall when On - Driver Door Open is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu:


- On vehicles with RKE, press  on the RKE transmitter and open the door.
- On vehicles with keyless access, press the lock/unlock button on the outside driver door handle and open the driver door. The RKE transmitter must be present for the recall to activate.
- If the driver door is already open, press  on the RKE transmitter to activate the recall.

To activate the recall when On - At Ignition On is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu:

- Place the ignition in ON/RUN/START.

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory, power mirror, or power seat controls; or press the adjustable pedal switch. If On - At Ignition On is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu, placing the ignition in OFF also stops the recall.

If something has blocked the driver seat and/or the adjustable pedals while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by opening the driver door and pressing  on the RKE transmitter. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

### Easy Exit Recall

If programmed on in the vehicle personalisation menu, this feature moves the seat approximately 7 cm

(3 in) rearward automatically allowing the driver more room to exit the vehicle.

Easy Exit recall activates when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory, power seat controls, or the adjustable pedal switch.

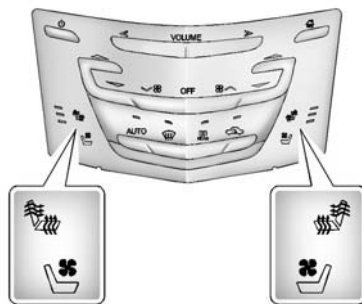
If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling the exit position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the power seat control rearward for two seconds. Try recalling the exit position again. If the exit position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

## 3-8 Seats and Restraints

### Heated and Ventilated Front Seats



#### Warning



If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



#### Heated and Ventilated Seat Buttons Shown, Heated Seat Buttons Similar

The buttons are near the climate controls on the centre stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press  or  to heat the driver or passenger seat.

Press  or , if available, to ventilate the driver or passenger seat. A ventilated seat has a fan that pulls or pushes air through the seat. The air is not cooled.

When this feature is off, the symbols on the buttons are white. When a heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red. When a ventilated seat (if available) is turned on, the symbol turns blue.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the front heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

## Remote Start Heated and Ventilated Seats

During a remote start, the heated or ventilated seats can be turned on automatically. When it is cold outside, the heated seats turn on, and when it is hot outside the ventilated seats turn on. This feature is cancelled when the ignition is turned on. Press the button to use the heated or ventilated seats after the vehicle is started.

The heated or ventilated seat indicator lights on the button do not turn on during a remote start.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated or ventilated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* and *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

## Rear Seats

### Split Folding Seatbacks

With this feature, either side of the rear seatback can be folded down for more cargo space.

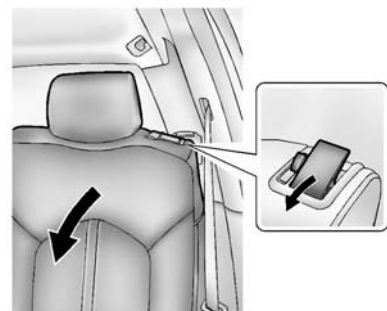
### Folding the Seatbacks

#### Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seatback:

1. Unbuckle the rear safety belts and move the front seatbacks to the upright position. See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.
2. Make sure that there is nothing under, in front of, or on the seat.



3. Lift the lever on the top of the seatback. A tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.
4. Fold the backrest forward. A tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

Keep the seatback in the upright, locked position when not in use.

## 3-10 Seats and Restraints

### Raising the Seatbacks

#### Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

#### Warning

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise the seat backrest:

1. Lift the lever on top of the seatback. Raise the seatback and release the lever. A tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.
2. Push the seatback rearward until it locks in the upright position. A tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.
3. Make sure the rear safety belts are not twisted or caught between the seat cushion and the seatback.

### Reclining the Seatbacks

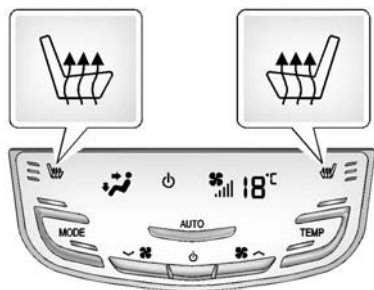
To recline the seat backrest:

1. Lift and hold the lever on top of the seatback. A tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.
2. Tilt the seatback rearward, and then release the lever when the seatback is in the desired position. A tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

### Heated Rear Seats

#### Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. See the *Warning* under *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* on page 3-8.



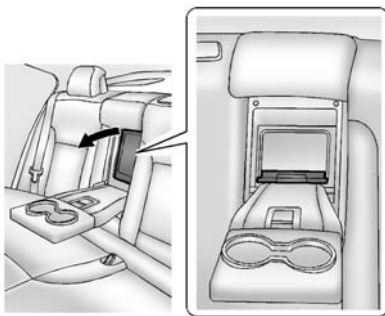
If available, the buttons are on the rear climate control panel on the rear of the centre console.

With the ignition in ON/RUN/START, press or to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion and seatback. An indicator on the climate control display appears when this feature is on.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat changes to the next lower setting, and then

the off setting. Three lights indicate the highest setting, and one light indicates the lowest.

### Rear Seat Pass-Through Door



There is a rear seat pass-through door in the centre of the rear seatback. Fold down the centre armrest and push down on the latch to open the door.

## Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

### Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas

(Continued)

## 3-12 Seats and Restraints

### Warning (Continued)

are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders* on page 5-12.

### Why Safety Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windscreen, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the

safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

### Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?**

**A:** You *could* be - whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chances of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, are *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?**

**A:** Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts - not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all regions, the law requires wearing safety belts.

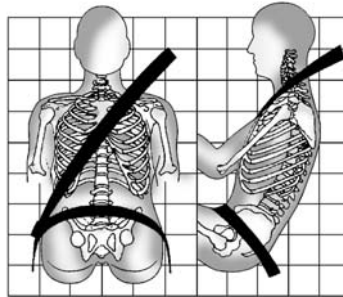
## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-29* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-31*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

### Warning

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.



## 3-14 Seats and Restraints

### Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.

2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

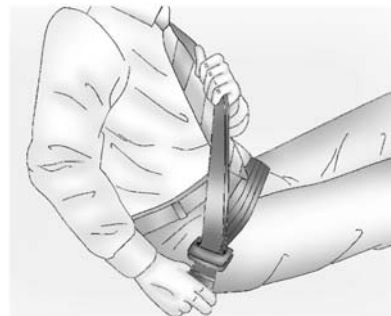


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

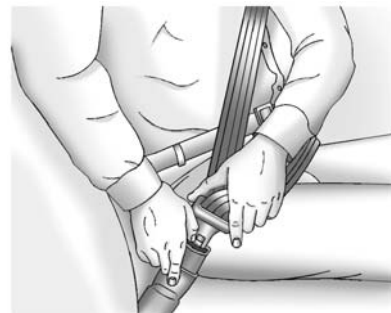
Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.



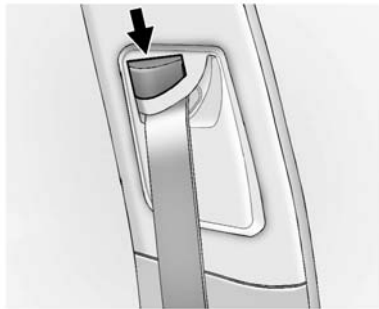
To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

### Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and right front passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* on page 3-13.



Move the height adjuster up to the desired position by pushing up on the height adjuster.

After the height adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without pressing the release button to make sure it has locked into position. Press the release button to lower the height adjuster.

### Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they

are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crash and will deploy in side, rear and rollover events if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, they will need to be replaced, and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash* on page 3-18.

### Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

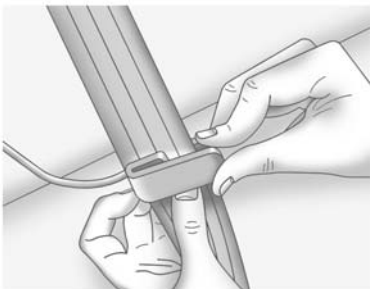
This vehicle may have rear shoulder belt comfort guides for the outboard passenger positions in the rear seat. If not, they are available through the dealer. The guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, and

## 3-16 Seats and Restraints

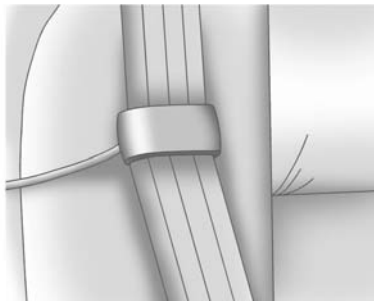
properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

Here is how to install a comfort guide to the safety belt:

1. Remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

### Warning

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure that the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting the neck.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide back into its storage pocket located on the side of the seat.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the foetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the foetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

## Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. See the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

## Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer

## 3-18 Seats and Restraints

to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders* on page 5-12.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care* on page 3-18.

### Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

#### Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

### Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

#### Warning

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged.

See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-13.

#### Warning

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

## Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and for the second row passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the second row passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger.

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on an attached label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the centre of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

### **Warning**

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* on page 3-22.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

### Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

### Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 3-29* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-31*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13* for more information.

## Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the centre of the steering wheel.



The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



**Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar**

The driver and front outboard passenger seat-mounted side impact airbags are in the sides of the seatbacks closest to the door.



**Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar**

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

**⚠ Warning**

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury  
(Continued)



### Warning (Continued)

or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

### When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-19*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is travelling.

It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts.

A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck, if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

### **What Makes an Airbag Inflate?**

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the

inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-20.

### **How Does an Airbag Restrain?**

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the

first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* on page 3-22.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

### **What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?**

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realise an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after deployment. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for

## 3-24 Seats and Restraints

several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-20.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

### Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning lights, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

### Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if attempting to restart the vehicle after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windscreens are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windscreen breakage may also occur from the front passenger airbag.

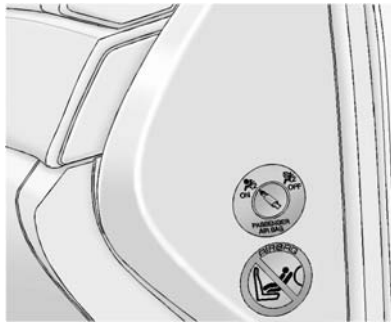
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another

crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.

- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* on page 13-1.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

### Airbag On-Off Switch

The vehicle has an airbag on-off switch that you can use to manually turn on or off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag.



This switch should only be turned to the off position if the person in the front outboard passenger position falls under the conditions specified in this manual as follows:

**Infant: An infant (less than 1 year old) must travel in the front seat because:**

- My vehicle has no rear seat;
- My vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or

- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

**Child age 1 to 12: A child age 1 to 12 must travel in the front seat because:**

- My vehicle has no rear seat;
- Although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must travel in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of my vehicle; or
- The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to travel in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

## 3-26 Seats and Restraints

**Medical Condition: A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:**

- *Causes the passenger airbag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and*
- *Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.*

### Warning

If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned off for a person who is not in a risk group identified by the national government, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

Do not turn off the passenger frontal airbag unless the person sitting there is in a risk group identified by the national government.



To turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the off position.

The off symbol will come on in the passenger airbag status indicator located in the overhead console to let you know that the front outboard

passenger frontal airbag is off, after the system check is completed. The airbag off light will come on and stay on to let you know that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is off. See *Airbag On-Off Light* on page 5-14.

### Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the front passenger frontal airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-13 for more information, including important safety information.



To turn the front outboard passenger frontal airbag on again, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the on position.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is now enabled (may inflate). See *Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-14* for more information.

## Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your

dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

### Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

## Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly.

The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, any airbag module, ceiling or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tyres and Wheels on page 10-52* for additional important information.

If your vehicle needs to be modified because you have a disability and you have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the

airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, contact your dealer.

### Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13*.

#### **Caution**

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-20. See your dealer for service.

### Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

#### **Warning**

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13* for more information.

#### **Warning**

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

## Child Restraints

### Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle safety belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Fasten the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If not, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-14*. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child’s pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-14*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.



## 3-30 Seats and Restraints

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

### Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.



### Warning

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance travelled nor the age and size of the traveller changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

### Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither

the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

### Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



### Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front

(Continued)

## 3-32 Seats and Restraints

### Warning (Continued)

seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint.

### Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

### Warning

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

## Child Restraint Systems



### Rear-Facing Infant Seat

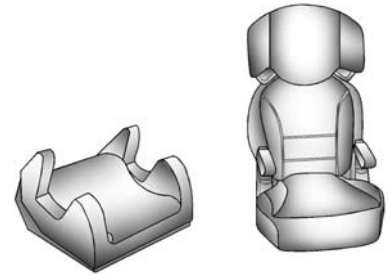
A rear-facing infant seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



### Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



### Booster Seats

A booster seat is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

## 3-34 Seats and Restraints

### Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

#### Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or ISOFIX system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the ISOFIX system. See *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40 for more information.

Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle - even when no child is in it.

### Securing the Child within the Child Restraint

#### Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

### Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.


Whenever possible, children age 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

If a child restraint is secured in the front outboard passenger seat, there is a switch on the instrument panel to manually turn off the front outboard passenger airbag. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-25* and *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat) on page 3-41* or *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat) on page 3-42* for more information, including important safety information.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.



DO NOT place rear-facing child seat on this seat. DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

|   |
|---|
|  <b>Warning</b>  |
| <p>A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.</p> <p>Even if the airbag switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(Continued)</p> |

|   |
|---|
| <b>Warning (Continued)</b>  |
| <p>deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.</p> <p>Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.</p> |

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

## 3-36 Seats and Restraints

---

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or ISOFIX anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, we recommend that rear-facing child restraints not be transported in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle - even when no child is in it.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, review the following illustrations.

### Configurations for Use of Child Restraints

Use the following chart to determine which seats in the vehicle are suitable for the carriage of child restraint systems.

| Mass Group               | Passenger Seating Positions |                     |             |                    |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------------|
|                          | Front Passenger             | Rear Right Outboard | Rear Centre | Rear Left Outboard |
| Group 0<br>Up to 10 kg   | X                           | U                   | U           | U                  |
| Group 0 +<br>Up to 13 kg | X                           | U                   | U           | U                  |
| Group I<br>9 to 18 kg    | X                           | U                   | U           | U                  |
| Group II<br>15 to 25 kg  | X                           | U                   | U           | U                  |
| Group III<br>22 to 36 kg | X                           | U                   | U           | U                  |

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints given in the attached list. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted, or semi-universal categories.

B: Built-in restraint approved for this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.



### 3-38 Seats and Restraints

#### ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems Installation Suitability for Various Seating Positions

Use the following chart to determine which seats in the vehicle are suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint systems.

| Mass Group               | Class Size | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX Positions |                     |             |                    |
|--------------------------|------------|---------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------------|
|                          |            |         | Front Passenger          | Rear Right Outboard | Rear Centre | Rear Left Outboard |
| Infant Carbed (Carrycot) | F          | ISO/L1  | X                        | X                   | X           | X                  |
|                          | G          | ISO/L2  | X                        | X                   | X           | X                  |
| 0<br>(up to 10 kg)       | E          | ISO/R1  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
| 0+<br>(up to 13 kg)      | E          | ISO/R1  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | D          | ISO/R2  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | C          | ISO/R3  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
| I<br>(9 to 18 kg)        | D          | ISO/R2  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | C          | ISO/R3  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | B          | ISO/F2  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | B1         | ISO/F2X | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
|                          | A          | ISO/F3  | X                        | IUF                 | X           | IUF                |
| II<br>(15 to 25 kg)      |            |         |                          |                     |             |                    |

| Mass Group   | Class Size | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX Positions |                     |             |                    |
|--|------------|---------|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------|--------------------|
|  |            |         | Front Passenger          | Rear Right Outboard | Rear Centre | Rear Left Outboard |
| III<br>(22 to 36 kg)   |            |         |                          |                     |             |                    |
| IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing “universal” category child restraint systems approved for use in this mass group.  |            |         |                          |                     |             |                    |
| IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints given in the attached list. These ISOFIX child restraints are those of the specific vehicle, restricted, or semi-universal categories. |            |         |                          |                     |             |                    |
| X: Position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and or size class.  |            |         |                          |                     |             |                    |

## 3-40 Seats and Restraints

Child restraint system size classes and fixtures are as follows:

**A - ISO/F3:** Full-height forward-facing toddler child restraint system.

**B - ISO/F2:** Reduced-height forward-facing toddler child restraint system.

**B1 - ISO/F2X:** Reduced-height forward-facing toddler child restraint system.

**C - ISO/R3:** Full-size rear-facing toddler child restraint system.

**D - ISO/R2:** Reduced-size rear-facing toddler child restraint system.

**E - ISO/R1:** Rear-facing infant child restraint system.


**F - ISO/L1:** Left side-facing position carrycot.

**G - ISO/L2:** Right side-facing position carrycot.

### ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



Rear Seat

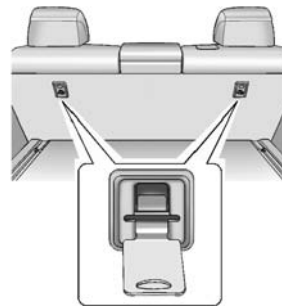
ISOFIX mounting brackets are marked by a  on the seatback.

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the “ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems Suitability” table. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-34.

No more than two ISOFIX child restraint systems can be installed on the rear seats at the same time, though not right next to each other.

### Top-Tether Fastening Eyes



Top-tether fastening eyes are marked with  for a child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether fastening eyes.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the “ISOFIX Child

Restraint Systems Suitability” table by IUF. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-34.

## Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the ISOFIX system, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40 for how and where to install the child restraint using ISOFIX. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40 for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if

the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If the child restraint does not have the ISOFIX system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

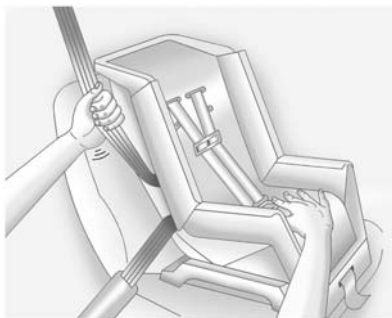
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-34.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle’s safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt. If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40 for more information.
6. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unfasten the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

### Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-34.

There is a switch on the instrument panel that you can use to turn off the right front passenger frontal airbag. See *Airbag On-Off Switch* on page 3-25 for more information, including important safety information.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

#### **Warning**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Even if the airbag switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

 **Warning**

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the right front passenger airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13* for more information, including important safety information.

 **Warning**

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. If not, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child. This is especially the case if rear-facing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.

 **Warning**

"Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!"

## 3-44 Seats and Restraints

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint, a rear-facing child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle, even if the airbag is off.

If the child restraint has the ISOFIX system, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems on page 3-40* for how and where to install the child restraint using ISOFIX. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems on page 3-40* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

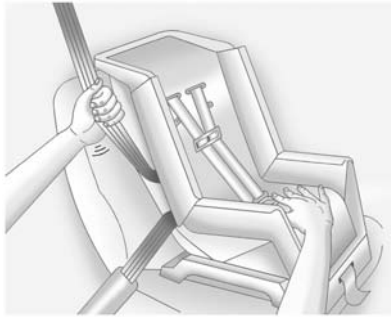
When the airbag on-off switch has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, the off indicator in the airbag off light should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Airbag On-Off Light on page 5-14*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

Position the release button on the buckle, so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat and the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-40 for more information.

6. Before placing a child in the restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unfasten the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

If you turned the airbag off with the switch, turn on the right front passenger airbag when you remove the child restraint from the vehicle unless the person who will be sitting there is a member of a passenger airbag risk group. See *Airbag On-Off Switch* on page 3-25 for more information, including important safety information.





## Storage

### Storage Compartments

|                              |     |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Storage Compartments .....   | 4-1 |
| Glove Box .....              | 4-1 |
| Cupholders .....             | 4-2 |
| Front Storage .....          | 4-2 |
| Armrest Storage .....        | 4-2 |
| Centre Console Storage ..... | 4-3 |

### Additional Storage Features

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Cargo Cover .....             | 4-3  |
| Cargo Tie-Downs .....         | 4-5  |
| Cargo Management System ..... | 4-5  |
| Cargo Net .....               | 4-9  |
| Convenience Net .....         | 4-11 |

### Roof Rack System

|                        |      |
|------------------------|------|
| Roof Rack System ..... | 4-11 |
|------------------------|------|

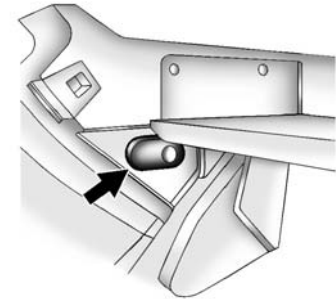
## Storage Compartments

### ⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

## Glove Box

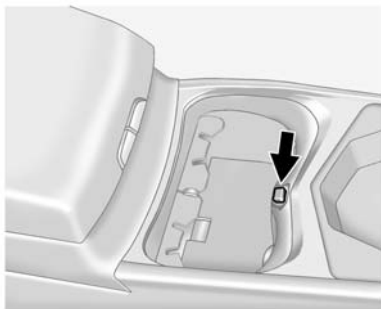
Lift the glove box handle up to open it. Use the key to lock and unlock the glove box.



The glove box is air conditioned and can be used to store items at a lower temperature. The vehicle air conditioning must be turned on for the maximum cool air to enter the glove box. Move the slide control to allow cool air into the glove box. After opening the air flow, close the glove box door to keep the cold air from entering the vehicle.

## 4-2 Storage

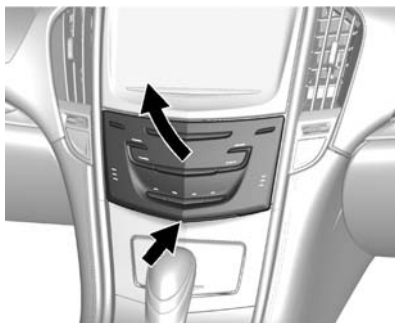
### Cupholders



The front cupholder has a divider that can be adjusted to accommodate large or small containers.

For large containers, press the button to move aside the divider and make the cupholder deeper. For small containers, push down on the top edge of the divider to lock it back in place and make the cupholder shorter.

### Front Storage



If equipped with storage behind the climate control system, touch and hold the chrome bar at the bottom of the climate control system panel to open. There is a USB port inside. See “USB/SD Port” in the infotainment manual.

Keep the storage area closed when not in use.

Touch and hold the chrome bar at the bottom of the climate control system panel again to close.



A storage area is located in front of the gear lever. Push upward on the top of the door and release; the door automatically opens.

There is an accessory power outlet inside. See *Power Outlets* on page 5-6.

### Armrest Storage

For vehicles with a rear seat armrest, pull the rear seat armrest forward to access cupholders with removable liners. For vehicles with a rear storage area, pull the lever to access.

## Centre Console Storage

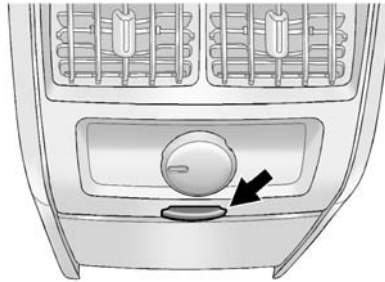
The centre console has an armrest, upper storage tray, and lower storage area.

The armrest can be adjusted. Slide the top of the armrest to adjust to the desired position.

Press the driver side button to access the upper storage tray.

Press the passenger side button to access the lower storage area.

There is an accessory power outlet inside the centre console and two USB ports. If equipped, there is an SD card reader and auxiliary jack. See *Power Outlets on page 5-6* and the infotainment manual.

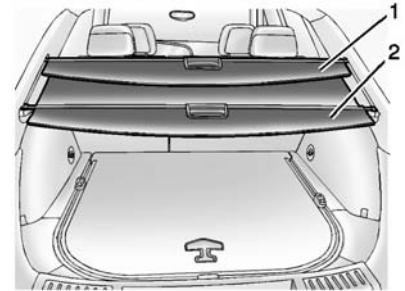


Press the button to open the storage area on the rear of the centre console. If equipped with rear seat entertainment (RSE), the audio/video jacks, USB port, and SD port will be inside. See the infotainment manual.

## Additional Storage Features

### Cargo Cover

For vehicles with the dual position cargo cover, it can be used to cover items in the cargo area of the vehicle.



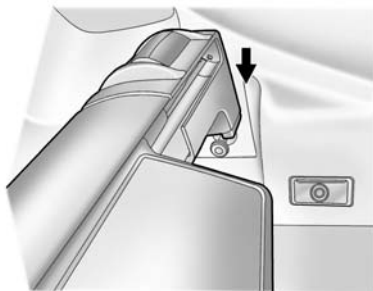
The shade can be set in two positions. It can be set in a halfway open (1) position for loading objects

## 4-4 Storage

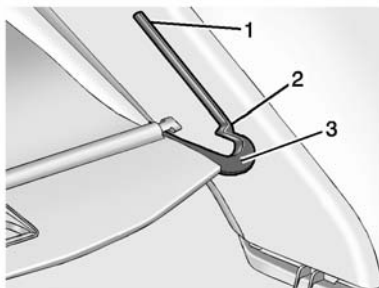
into the rear compartment, or the lower (2) position to conceal objects in the rear compartment.

### Install the Cargo Cover

1. Hold the cartridge so that the pull-out shade faces the rear of the vehicle.



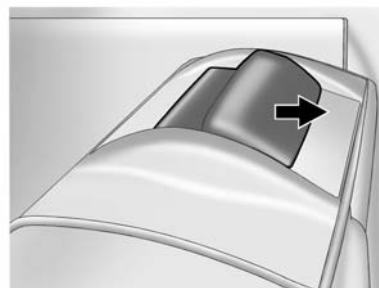
2. Align the cartridge over the pins on the trim panels of the vehicle.
3. Push down on the cartridge to snap it into place.
4. Unroll the shade toward the rear of the vehicle.



5. Insert the shade pins in the channels (3) on both sides.
6. Slide the shade to the lower (2) position, or the halfway open (1) position.

### Remove the Cargo Cover

1. Remove the cover from the channels and carefully roll it back up.



2. Slide the button on the top to release the cartridge.
3. Pull up to remove the cartridge from the pins.

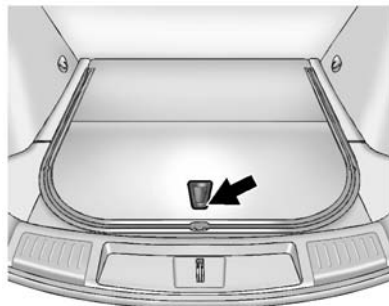
### Warning

An unsecured cargo cover could strike people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Store the cargo cover securely or remove it from the vehicle.

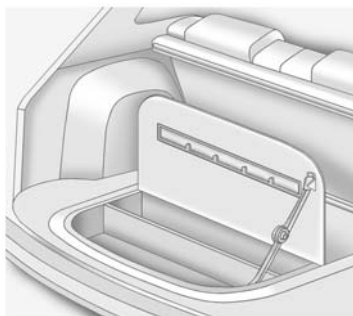
## Cargo Tie-Downs

For vehicles equipped with cargo tie-downs, the four tie-downs are located in the rear compartment of the vehicle. Use the tie-downs to secure small loads.

## Cargo Management System



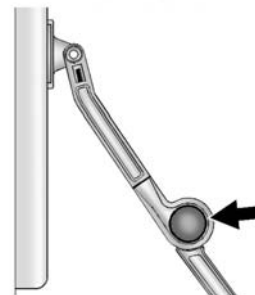
To open the cargo management system, press the rear of the handle to unlatch it and then lift the handle up.



A prop rod locks to hold the cover up when opened.

Four hooks are located on the inside cover and can be used for storing items.

There may be additional storage compartments on each side of the cargo management system. Lift the panel up to open.



Press the red button on the prop rod to close the cover.

### Rear Storage Area

#### Warning

An improperly latched and closed cargo cover, or cargo left in the open position, could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden manoeuvre. Someone could be injured. Be sure to return the cover to the

(Continued)

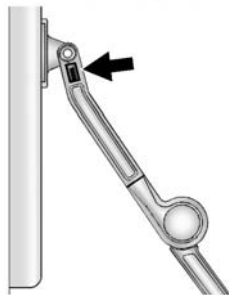
## 4-6 Storage

### Warning (Continued)

closed position and latch before driving. If the cover is removed, always store it outside of the vehicle. When it is replaced, always be sure that it is securely reattached.

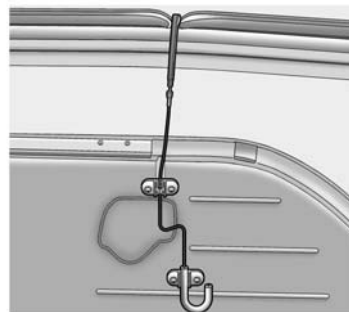
To access the rear storage areas of the cargo management system, and the tire sealant and compressor kit:

1. Remove the cargo cover, if equipped.
2. Open the cargo management system cover.



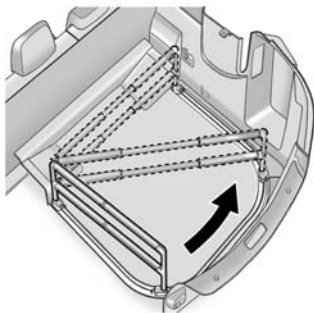
3. Release the prop rod from the inside cover by sliding the red clip down.

Unhook the prop rod from the pin on the inside cover. Store the unhooked prop rod by folding it into the cargo management compartment.

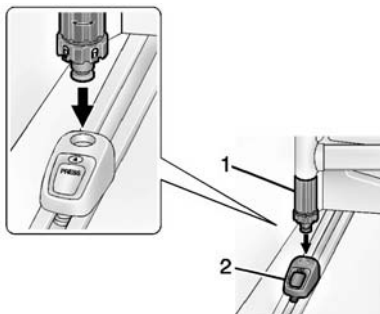


4. Store the cargo management system cover by hooking it onto the weatherstrip.

## U-Rail





For vehicles with a u-rail system, the fence can be moved to different positions on the u-rail track to secure cargo.



Press both adapter buttons to move the adapters (2) on the straight part of the u-rail.

To move the fence around the u-rail, disconnect one side:


1. Unlock by turning the latch (1) to align  with the arrow on the adapter (2).
2. Press the adapter button to move the adapters (2) to the desired position.

3. Reinstall the fence and lock both latches (1) by turning to align  with the arrow on the adapter (2).



Use the fence to secure items in place.

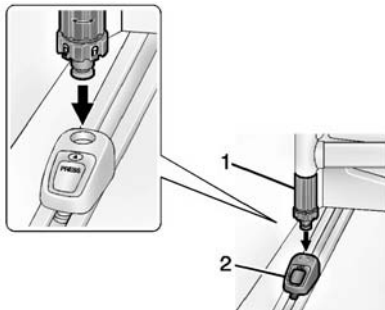
### Removing the Fence


Unlock by turning both latches (1) to align  with the arrow on the adapter (2). Lift and remove the fence.



## 4-8 Storage

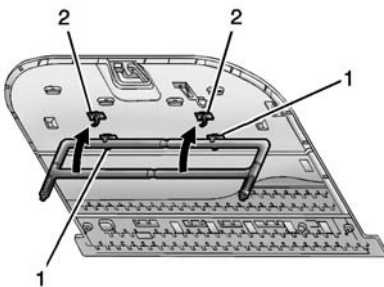
### Installing the Fence



Insert the fence into the adapters and lock both latches (1) by turning to align  with the arrow on the adapter (2).

### Storing the Fence

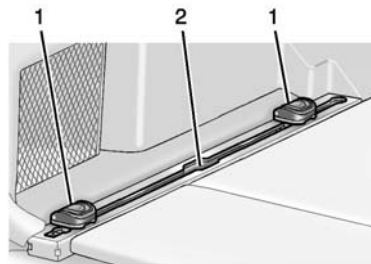
1. Lift the cargo management system cover.
2. Release the cover from the prop rod as described in the previous steps.



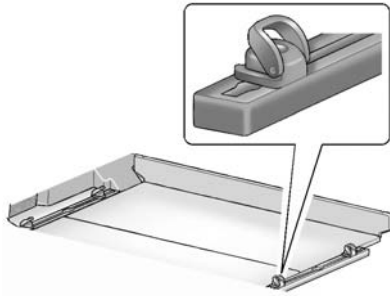
3. Insert the top of the fence into the lower two clips (1).
4. Turn the bottom of the fence up and insert it into the upper two clips (2).

### D-Ring Sliders

For vehicles with a D-ring system, there are four D-ring sliders that move along rails. These can be used as tie-downs when storing cargo.



Insert the D-ring sliders (1) into the channel (2) located in the middle of the rail. Push the button to move the D-ring slider along the rail.



The loop of the D-ring slider must be facing inward toward the storage area and the ring must be in the up position for proper usage.

## Cargo Net

### Warning

Do not stack items higher than the upper end of the cargo net or hang anything from the net. Avoid items that have sharp edges or that apply excessive force to the

(Continued)

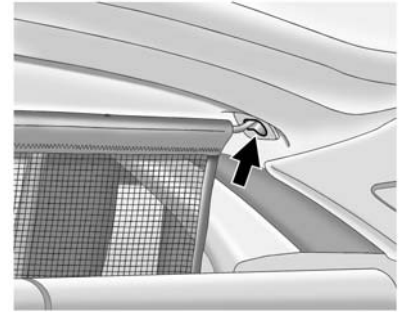
### Warning (Continued)

net. If items are not properly stored, damage to the net could occur and items can be thrown about the vehicle. You or others could be injured. Always store items behind the net.

If equipped, the cargo net can be used to store light loads, keeping them from falling over or being thrown into the cabin during heavy braking.

The net should not be overloaded or used to store heavy loads.

There are four openings in the headliner: two behind the front seats and two behind the rear seats.

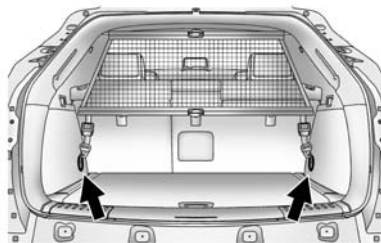


1. Insert the top corners of the cargo net into the large opening in the headliner and secure by sliding them into the small opening.
2. The rear seatbacks should be folded down when the net is installed in the headliner opening behind the front seats.

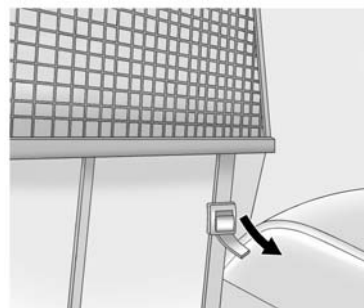
## 4-10 Storage



3. Mount the cargo net to the rear seat tethers on the back of the folded down rear seats and pull on the straps to tighten the net.
4. When the net is installed in the headliner opening behind the rear seats, the rear seatbacks should be upright.



5. Mount the cargo net to the cargo tie-downs on the lower side panels.



6. Pull on the straps to tighten the net.

### Cargo Net Storage

The cargo net can be removed from the vehicle and stored in the cargo management system.

1. Disconnect the net from the roof openings and the tethers.
2. Press the red button on the centre of the net to fold it in half.
3. Roll up the cargo net and store in the attached vinyl bag.

4. Open the cargo management system cover.
5. For vehicles with an inflator kit, store the cargo net in the available space next to the kit.

### Convenience Net

This vehicle may have a convenience net located in the rear of the vehicle. Attach it to the cargo tie-downs for storing small loads.

Do not use the net to store heavy loads.

## Roof Rack System

### Warning

If something is carried on top of the vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack - like panelling, plywood, or a mattress - the wind can catch it while the vehicle is being driven. The item being carried could be violently torn off, and this could cause a collision and damage the vehicle. Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of the vehicle unless using a GM certified accessory carrier.

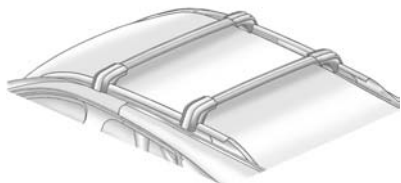
If equipped, the roof rack can be used to load items. For roof racks that do not have crossrails included, GM Certified crossrails can be purchased as an accessory. See your dealer for additional information.

### Caution

Loading cargo on the roof rack that weighs more than 100 kg (220 lb) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage the vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests evenly between the crossrails, making sure to fasten cargo securely.

## 4-12 Storage

---



To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to make sure crossrails and cargo are securely fastened. Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds,

sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise it may result in loss of control. If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to make sure the cargo remains in its place. Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-8.

# Instruments and Controls

## Controls

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Steering Wheel Adjustment ...      | 5-2 |
| Steering Wheel Controls .....      | 5-2 |
| Heated Steering Wheel .....        | 5-2 |
| Horn .....                         | 5-3 |
| Windscreen Wiper/Washer ...        | 5-3 |
| Rear Window Wiper/<br>Washer ..... | 5-4 |
| Headlamp Washer .....              | 5-5 |
| Clock .....                        | 5-5 |
| Power Sockets .....                | 5-6 |
| Cigarette Lighter .....            | 5-7 |
| Ashtrays .....                     | 5-7 |

## Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Warning Lights, Gauges, and<br>Indicators ..... | 5-8  |
| Instrument Cluster .....                        | 5-9  |
| Speedometer .....                               | 5-10 |
| Mileometer .....                                | 5-10 |
| Trip Odometer .....                             | 5-11 |
| Rev Counter .....                               | 5-11 |
| Fuel Gauge .....                                | 5-11 |

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Engine Coolant Temperature<br>Gauge .....                           | 5-12 |
| Seat Belt Reminders .....   | 5-12 |
| Airbag Readiness Light .....  | 5-13 |
| Airbag On-Off Light .....   | 5-14 |
| Charging System Light .....   | 5-15 |
| Malfunction<br>Indicator Lamp .....                                 | 5-15 |
| Brake System Warning<br>Light .....                                 | 5-18 |
| Electric Parking Brake<br>Light .....                               | 5-18 |
| Service Electric Parking Brake<br>Light .....                       | 5-19 |
| Antilock Brake System (ABS)<br>Warning Light .....                  | 5-19 |
| Lane Departure Warning<br>(LDW) Light .....                         | 5-19 |
| Vehicle Ahead Indicator .....                                       | 5-20 |
| Traction Off Light .....  | 5-20 |
| StabiliTrak <sup>®</sup> OFF Light .....                            | 5-20 |
| Traction Control System<br>(TCS)/StabiliTrak <sup>®</sup> Light ... | 5-21 |
| Engine Coolant Temperature<br>Warning Light .....                   | 5-21 |
| Tyre Pressure Light .....   | 5-22 |
| Engine Oil Pressure Light ...                                       | 5-22 |
| Fuel Economy Light .....  | 5-22 |
| Low Fuel Warning Light .....  | 5-23 |

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Security Light .....                           | 5-23 |
| Main-Beam On Light .....                       | 5-23 |
| Adaptive Forward Lighting<br>(AFL) Light ..... | 5-24 |
| Front Fog Lamp Light .....                     | 5-24 |
| Rear Fog Lamp Light .....                      | 5-24 |
| Lamps On Reminder .....                        | 5-24 |
| Cruise Control Light .....                     | 5-25 |

## Information Displays

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Driver Information<br>Centre (DIC) ..... | 5-25 |
|--|------|

## Vehicle Messages

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Vehicle Messages .....                         | 5-28 |
| Battery Voltage and Charging<br>Messages ..... | 5-28 |
| Brake System Messages ...                      | 5-28 |
| Compass Messages .....                         | 5-29 |
| Cruise Control Messages ...                    | 5-29 |
| Door Ajar Messages .....                       | 5-30 |
| Engine Cooling System<br>Messages .....        | 5-30 |
| Engine Oil Messages .....                      | 5-31 |
| Engine Power Messages ...                      | 5-31 |
| Fuel System Messages .....                     | 5-31 |
| Key and Lock Messages ...                      | 5-32 |
| Lamp Messages .....                            | 5-32 |

## 5-2 Instruments and Controls

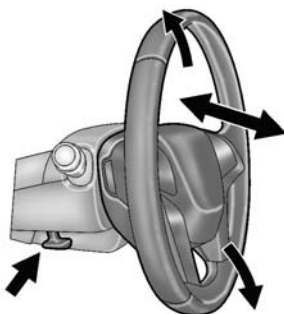
|  |      |
|--|------|
| Object Detection System Messages ..... | 5-33 |
| Ride Control System Messages .....     | 5-35 |
| Airbag System Messages ....            | 5-36 |
| Security Messages .....                | 5-36 |
| Service Vehicle Messages ...           | 5-36 |
| Starting the Vehicle Messages .....    | 5-36 |
| Tyre Messages .....                    | 5-37 |
| Transmission Messages .....            | 5-37 |
| Vehicle Reminder Messages .....        | 5-38 |
| Vehicle Speed Messages ....            | 5-38 |
| Washer Fluid Messages .....            | 5-38 |

### Vehicle Personalisation

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Vehicle Personalisation ..... | 5-38 |
|-------------------------------|------|

## Controls

### Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.


Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

### Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.


### Heated Steering Wheel



 (**Heated Steering Wheel**): For vehicles equipped with a heated steering wheel, press to turn on or off. A light next to the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

## Horn

Press  on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

## Windscreen Wiper/Washer




With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windscreen wiper stalk to select the wiper speed.

**HI:** Use for fast wipes.

**LO:** Use for slow wipes.



**INT (Intermittent Wipes):** Use for intermittent wipes. To adjust wipe frequency, turn the  INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes. If the vehicle has Rainsense™, see the following Rainsense information.

**OFF:** Use to turn the wipers off.

**1X (Mist):** For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement on page 10-23*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor.

## Wipe Parking

If the ignition is changed to STOPPING THE ENGINE/OFF mode while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to off before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is changed to STOPPING THE ENGINE/OFF while the wipers are operating due to windscreen washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

## Rainsense™

If equipped with Rainsense, a sensor located near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper.




## 5-4 Instruments and Controls

Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.



### INT (Rainsense Wipe Sensitivity Control)

Move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the  INT band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

### Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the windshield wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windshield wipers and/or manual windshield wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windscreen.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

### Windscreen Washer

Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer had been

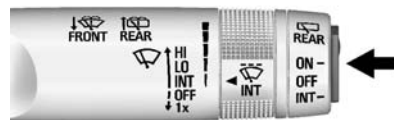
activated. See *Washer Fluid* on page 10-18 for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

### Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windscreen is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windscreen, blocking your vision.

### Rear Window Wiper/Washer


The rear wiper controls are on the end of the windshield wiper stalk.



**ON:** Press the upper portion of the button for continuous rear window wipes.

**OFF:** The rear wiper turns off when the button is returned to the middle position.

**INT (Intermittent Rear Wipes):** Press the lower portion of the button to set a delay between wipes.

 **(Rear Washer):** Push the windscreen wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The lever automatically returns to its original position when released.

### Rear Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the rear wiper control to OFF. This disables the rear wiper.

If the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the rear wiper will automatically stop at the base of the rear window.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

### Reverse Gear Wipes

If the rear wiper control is off, the rear wiper will automatically operate continuously when the gear lever is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is performing low or high speed wipes. If the rear wiper control is off, the gear lever is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is performing interval wipes, then the rear wiper automatically performs interval wipes.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

The windscreen washer reservoir is used for the windscreen and the rear window. Check the fluid level in the reservoir if either washer is not working. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.

## Headlamp Washer

If equipped with headlamp washers, they are located to the side of the headlamps.

The headlamps must be on in order to use the headlamp washers. If the headlamps are not on, only the windscreen will be washed.

Pull the wiper lever toward you and hold briefly to activate. The headlamp washers will spray once, pause, and spray again. The headlamp washer will spray again after five windscreen wash cycles.

To refill the windscreen washer fluid, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.

## Clock

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See "Home Page" in the infotainment manual for information about how to use the menu system.

## 5-6 Instruments and Controls

### Setting the Time

To set the time:

1. From the Home Page, press the SETTINGS screen button and press Time and Date.
2. Press Set Time and press + or - to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.
3. Press ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

If auto timing is set, the time displayed on the clock may not update immediately when driving into a new time zone.

To set the date:

1. Press the SETTINGS screen button and press Time and Date.
2. Press Set Date and press + or - to increase or decrease month, day, or year.
3. Press ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

### Power Sockets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle may have five accessory power outlets.

The accessory power outlets are:

- Below the climate control system inside the front storage bin.
- Inside the centre floor console.
- On the rear of the centre floor console. For vehicles with a rear climate control system, there will be two accessory power outlets on the rear of the centre floor console.
- In the rear cargo area.

These are powered while the vehicle is in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY mode, or until the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of turning off the vehicle.

The power outlet located in the rear cargo area is powered at all times.

There is a small cap that must be removed to access the accessory power outlet. When not using the outlet be sure to cover it with the protective cap.

#### Caution

Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Power is always supplied to the rear cargo outlet. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 ampere rating.

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, ensure that you follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* on page 9-64.

 **Caution**

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

## Cigarette Lighter

There may be a cigarette lighter under the climate control system, inside the front storage bin.

To activate the cigarette lighter, push it in and release. The lighter pops out when it is ready to be used.

 **Caution**

Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.

## Ashtrays

There may be an ashtray under the climate control system on the centre stack. Press the door to release the ashtray.

To empty the ashtray, remove it from the instrument panel by holding the edges and pulling straight out. To reinstall, push the tray back into place.

There may also be ashtrays on the centre floor console behind the gear lever and in the rear doors.

 **Caution**

If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.

### Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

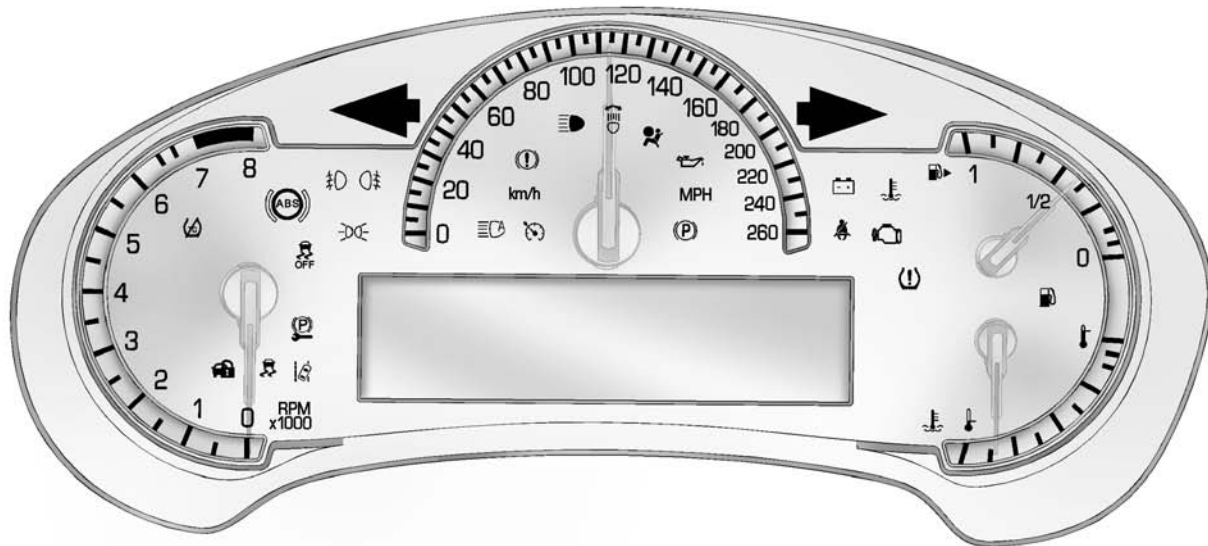
Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

## Instrument Cluster



## 5-10 Instruments and Controls

---

### Cluster Application Displays

The cluster has three interactive display zones.

Use the five-way control on the right steering wheel control to move between the different display zones and scroll through the different displays.

The left and right zones display Driver Information Centre (DIC) information. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

The centre zone displays application information for navigation, audio, phone, or settings. A speedometer can also be displayed in this centre zone.

### Navigation

If there is no active route, a compass will be displayed. If there is an active route, press SEL to end route guidance or turn the voice prompts on or off.

### Audio

While the Audio application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Audio menu. In the Audio menu search for music or change the audio source.

### Phone

While the Phone application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Phone menu. In the Phone menu, if there is no active phone call, view recent calls, or scroll through contacts. If there is an active call, mute the phone or switch to handset operation.

### Settings

Press SEL while the Settings application page is displayed to enter the Settings menu.

**Units:** Press SEL while Units is highlighted to enter the Units menu. Choose English or metric units by pressing SEL while the desired item is highlighted. A checkmark will be displayed next to the selected item.

**Info Pages:** Press SEL while Info Pages is highlighted to select the items to be displayed in the DIC information displays. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

**Open Source Software:** Press SEL while Open Source Software is highlighted to display open source software information.

### Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

### Mileometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometres or miles.

This vehicle has a tamper-resistant odometer. If the vehicle needs a new cluster installed, the new odometer is set to the mileage of the old odometer. If this is not

possible, it is set at zero and a label is put on the driver door to show the old mileage reading.

## Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

## Rev Counter

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

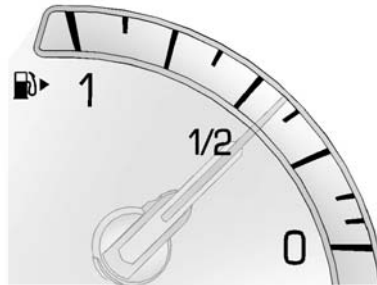
### Caution

If the engine is operated with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, the vehicle could be damaged and the damage would  
(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.

## Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refuelled soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.



## 5-12 Instruments and Controls

- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilise after the ignition is turned on and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

### Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine. While driving under normal operating conditions, if the needle moves into the shaded area, the

engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

### Seat Belt Reminders

#### Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument panel cluster.



When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime comes on to remind drivers to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is buckled, neither the light nor chime comes on.

#### Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a passenger safety belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-25*.



When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the front passenger to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, shopping bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or fasten the seat belt.

### Second Row Passenger Belt Reminder Light



Second row seating positions monitored for safety belt use are represented by a coloured symbol in the Driver information Centre (DIC) indicating safety belt status. When the vehicle is started, three safety belt symbols come on and stay on

for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their safety belts. After the passenger safety belt is buckled, the corresponding safety belt symbol in the instrument cluster turns green. If a safety belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey safety belt symbol. While the vehicle is moving, if a second row passenger that was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding safety belt symbol will change to flashing red and a chime may sound.

### Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* on page 3-19.



The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

#### **Warning**

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

## 5-14 Instruments and Controls

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also come on. See *Airbag System Messages on page 5-36*.

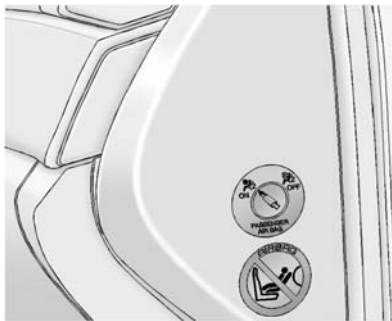
### Airbag On-Off Light

If the vehicle has an airbag on-off switch, it also has a passenger airbag status indicator located in the overhead console.



When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator symbol for on and off will light for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator on or off symbol will light to let you know the status of the front passenger frontal airbag.

When the front passenger frontal airbag is manually turned off using the airbag on-off switch on the side of the instrument panel, the off symbol will come on and stay on as a reminder that the airbag has been turned off. This light will go off when the airbag has been turned on. See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-25* for more information, including important safety information.



### Warning

If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned off for a person who is not in a risk group identified by the national government, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there. Do not turn off the passenger frontal airbag unless the person sitting there is in a risk group identified by the national government.

### Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the front passenger

(Continued)

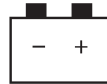
**Warning (Continued)**

frontal airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-13* for more information, including important safety information.

If the on symbol is lit, it means that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate). See *Airbag On-Off Switch on page 3-25* for more information, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the airbag on-off switch. See your retailer for service.

**Charging System Light**

The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) also displays a message.

See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-28*.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

**Malfunction Indicator Lamp**

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors the operation of the vehicle to ensure emissions are at acceptable levels, helping to maintain a clean environment. The malfunction indicator lamp comes on when the vehicle is placed in Service Only Mode, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-14*.



## 5-16 Instruments and Controls

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while the engine is running, this indicates that the OBD II system has detected a problem and diagnosis and service might be required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system also assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

### **Caution**

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### **Caution**

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tyres with other than those of the same Tyre Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on.

Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

**Light Flashing:** A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and

could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to stop and park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

**Light On Steady:** An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emission control system malfunction:

- Check that the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank* on page 9-55. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

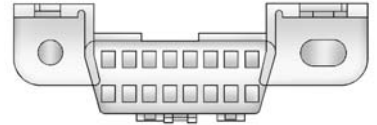
If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

See *Recommended Fuel* on page 9-54.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

### **Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs**

Depending on where you live, your vehicle may be required to participate in an emission control system inspection and maintenance program. For the inspection, the emission system test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The malfunction indicator lamp is on with the engine running, or if the vehicle is placed in Service Only Mode and the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on. See your dealer for assistance in verifying proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp.
- The OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. The vehicle would be considered not

ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

### Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected immediately.



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a basic braking system problem.

#### Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

### Electric Parking Brake Light



The parking brake status light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or another system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Brake System Messages* on page 5-28.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

## Service Electric Parking Brake Light



This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See the information for the Electric Parking Brake under *Parking Brake* on page 9-27. If a message displays in

the Driver Information Centre (DIC), see *Brake System Messages* on page 5-28.

## Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off.

If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn off the vehicle. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the

vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the ABS light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but the anti-lock brakes are not functioning.

If both the ABS and the brake system warning light are on, the vehicle's anti-lock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your retailer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* on page 5-18 and *Brake System Messages* on page 5-28.

## Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light





## 5-20 Instruments and Controls

If equipped, this light briefly comes on while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

This light comes on green when the system is on and ready to operate. When the system determines that the vehicle is leaving its lane without using the indicator, this light will change to amber and flash.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* on page 9-51.

### Vehicle Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this light in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

This light will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-45.

### Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button.

This light and the StabiliTrak OFF light come on when StabiliTrak is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

### StabiliTrak® OFF Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. If StabiliTrak is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

If the StabiliTrak and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

## Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup> Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS, and potentially the StabiliTrak system have been disabled. A DIC

message may display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the indicator/warning light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

### Caution

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* on page 10-16.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* on page 10-16.

### Tyre Pressure Light



For vehicles with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tyre pressures and the TPMS.

#### When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Centre (DIC) tyre pressure message may also display. See *Tyre Messages on page 5-37*. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tyres to the pressure value shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-42*.

#### When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45*.

### Engine Oil Pressure Light



Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.



This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

### Fuel Economy Light



This light is in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) display.

For vehicles with the fuel economy mode light, it comes on when the eco (economy) button, located next to the shift lever, is pressed. Press the button again to turn off the light and exit the fuel economy mode. See *Driving for Better Fuel Economy on page 1-18* and *Fuel Economy Mode on page 9-24* for more information.

## Low Fuel Warning Light



This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

## Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobiliser Operation on page 2-18*.

## Main-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use. See *Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer on page 6-3*.

## IntelliBeam® Light



This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system is enabled. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

## Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light



This light should come on briefly as the vehicle is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on solid when there is a problem with the AFL system. It flashes when the system is switching between lighting modes. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* on page 6-4.

## Front Fog Lamp Light



The fog lamp light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Front Fog Lamps* on page 6-8 for more information.

## Rear Fog Lamp Light



This light comes on when the rear fog lamps are in use.

For more information see *Rear Fog Lamps* on page 6-8.

## Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* on page 6-1.

## Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

See *Cruise Control* on page 9-32.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Light

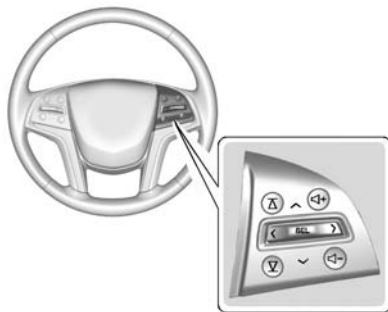


This light in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) comes on when the Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped) is active. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-34.

## Information Displays

### Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The DIC displays are shown in the left and right interactive display zones on the instrument cluster. The displays show the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are on the right steering wheel control.



**^ or v** : Press the five-way control to move up or down in a list.

**< or >** : Press the five-way control to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press **<** to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL (Select)**: Press the centre to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

### DIC Information Display Options

The information displays on the DIC can be turned on or off through the Settings menu.

1. Press SEL while viewing the Settings page in the centre display zone on the cluster.
2. Scroll to Info Pages and press SEL.
3. Press **^** or **v** to move through the list of possible information displays.

## 5-26 Instruments and Controls

---

4. Press SEL while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a checkmark will appear next to it.

### DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

**Speed:** The digital speedometer shows the vehicle speed in either kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

**Trip 1 and Trip 2:** Shows the current distance travelled, in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Fuel Range:** Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the

vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**Average Fuel Economy:** Shows the approximate average litres per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Instantaneous Fuel Economy:** Shows the current fuel economy in either litres per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change.

**Average Speed:** Shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles

per hour (mph). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Timer:** This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SEL while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press SEL briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SEL while this display is active.

**Compass:** Shows the direction the vehicle is driving.

**Turn Arrow:** Shows the next manoeuvre when using route guidance.

**Travel Time:** Shows the estimated time duration remaining for the current route.

**Distance to Destination:** Shows the distance to the destination when using route guidance.

**Traffic Sign Memory:** Shows traffic signs. The information for this page comes from a roadway database.

**Speed Warning:** Allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning, press SEL when Speed Warning is displayed. Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  to adjust the value. This feature can be turned off by pressing and holding SEL while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

**Cruise Set Speed:** Shows the speed the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is set to.

**Follow Distance:** Shows the current following distance to the vehicle ahead.

**Battery Voltage:** Shows the current battery voltage.

**Oil Life:** Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-31*. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see your dealer.

**Tyre Pressure:** Shows the approximate pressures of all four tyres. Tyre pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi). If the pressure is low, the value for that tyre is shown in amber. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-43* and *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45*.

**Vehicle Odometer:** Shows the odometer.

**Blank Page:** Allows for no information to be displayed in the DIC display zone(s).



## Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may display one after the other.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing SET/CLR. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed. All messages should be taken seriously and clearing the messages does not correct the problem.

The following are some of the vehicle messages that may be displayed depending on your vehicle content.

## Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

### BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system starts reducing features of the vehicle that may be noticed. At the point that features are disabled, this message displays. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

### LOW BATTERY

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low. See *Battery on page 10-21*.

### SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## TRANSPORT MODE ON

This message is displayed when the vehicle is in transport mode. Some features can be disabled while in this mode, including Remote Keyless Entry (RKE), remote start, and the vehicle alarm system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service to turn transport mode off.

## Brake System Messages

### BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-20*.

### STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the Electric Parking Brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Parking Brake on page 9-27*.

**RELEASE PARKING BRAKE**

This message is displayed if the Electric Parking Brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. See *Parking Brake* on page 9-27.

**SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST**

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. This is normal under these conditions. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

**SERVICE HAND BRAKE**

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the parking brake. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

**Compass Messages**

Dashes may be displayed if the vehicle temporarily loses communication with the Global Positioning System (GPS).

**Cruise Control Messages****ADAPTIVE CRUISE SET TO XXX**

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) speed is set. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-34.

**ADAPTIVE CRUISE TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when attempting to activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) when it is temporarily unavailable. The ACC system does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* on page 10-78.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

**CRUISE SET TO XXX**

This message displays when the cruise control speed is set. See *Cruise Control* on page 9-32.

**No Cruise Braking Gas Pedal Applied**

This message displays when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and the driver is pressing the accelerator pedal. When this occurs, ACC will not brake. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-34.

### **SERVICE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### **SHIFT TO PARK BEFORE EXITING**

This message may display if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is engaged holding the vehicle at a stop, and the driver attempts to exit the vehicle. Put the vehicle in P (Park) before exiting.

### **Door Ajar Messages**

#### **DOOR OPEN**

A door open symbol will be displayed on the DIC showing which door is open. If the vehicle has been shifted out of P (Park), a DOOR OPEN message will also be displayed. Close the door completely.

#### **HOOD OPEN**

This message will display along with a bonnet open symbol when the bonnet is open. Close the bonnet completely.

#### **REAR ACCESS OPEN**

This message will display along with a symbol when the tailgate is open. Close the tailgate completely.

### **Engine Cooling System Messages**

#### **A/C OFF DUE TO HIGH ENGINE TEMP**

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. The vehicle can continue to be driven.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

#### **COOLANT LEVEL LOW ADD COOLANT**

This message will display if the coolant is low. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-12*.

#### **ENGINE OVERHEATED - IDLE ENGINE**

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

#### **Engine Overheated - Turn Vehicle Off**

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid

severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

## **HIGH COOLANT TEMPERATURE**

This message displays if the coolant temperature is hot. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

## **Engine Oil Messages**

### **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON**

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the Oil Life System. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9, Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25, Engine Oil on page 10-6 and Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

### **ENGINE OIL HOT, IDLE ENGINE**

This message displays when the engine oil temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

### **ENGINE OIL LOW - ADD OIL**

On some vehicles, this message displays when the engine oil level may be too low. Check the oil level before filling to the recommended level. If the oil is not low and this message remains on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.

### **Engine Overheated - Turn Vehicle Off**

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

## **Engine Power Messages**

### **ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED**

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

## **Fuel System Messages**

### **FUEL LEVEL LOW**

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

### **TIGHTEN GAS CAP**

This message displays when the fuel cap is not on tight. Tighten the fuel cap.

### **Key and Lock Messages**

#### **NO REMOTE DETECTED**

This message displays when the transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

#### **NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED PLACE KEY IN TRANSMITTER POCKET THEN START YOUR VEHICLE**

This message displays when trying to start the vehicle if an RKE transmitter is not detected. The transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

#### **NO REMOTE PRESS BRAKE TO RESTART**

This message is displayed if the remote is no longer detected in the vehicle. Press the brake pedal to restart the vehicle.

#### **NUMBER OF KEYS PROGRAMMED**

This message displays when programming new keys to the vehicle.

#### **REMOTE LEFT IN VEHICLE**

This message displays when leaving the vehicle with the RKE transmitter still inside.

#### **REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY**

This message displays when the battery in the RKE transmitter needs to be replaced.

### **Lamp Messages**

#### **AFL (ADAPTIVE FORWARD LIGHTING) LAMPS NEED SERVICE**

This message displays when the AFL system is disabled and needs service. See your dealer. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) on page 6-4*.

#### **AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON**

This message is displayed when the exterior lamp control is in AUTO and the lights have turned on. See *Twilight Sentinel on page 6-6*.

#### **AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL OFF**

This message is displayed when the exterior lamp control is in AUTO and the lights have turned off. See *Twilight Sentinel on page 6-6*.

**XXX INDICATOR FAILURE**

When one of the indicators is out, this message displays to show which bulb needs to be replaced. See *Bulb Replacement on page 10-25* and *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-31*.

**Turn Signal On**

This message is displayed if the indicator has been left on. Turn off the indicator.

**Object Detection System Messages****AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP OFF**

This message displays when the Active Emergency Braking System has been turned off. See *Active Emergency Braking System on page 9-48*.

**AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP REDUCED**

This message displays when the Active Emergency Braking System has been set to the "Alert" setting. This setting disables most automatic braking functions of the Auto Collision Preparation feature. Some last-second automatic braking capability is still provided with the "Alert" setting, but braking is less likely to occur. See *Active Emergency Braking System on page 9-48*.

**AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when the Active Emergency Braking System has been unavailable for some time. The Active Emergency Braking System does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the

entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-78*.

- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

This message may also be displayed if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system.

**FORWARD COLLISION ALERT OFF**

This message displays when the Forward Collision Alert has been turned off.

**Front Camera Blocked Clean Windscreen**

This message displays when the camera is blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windscreen behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue. The Lane Departure Warning system will not operate. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward

## 5-34 Instruments and Controls

---

Collision Alert (FCA), and the Active Emergency Braking System may not work or may not work as well.

### **LANE DEPARTURE WARNING UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when attempting to activate the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system when it is temporarily unavailable. The LDW system does not need service.

This message could be due to the camera being blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windshield behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

### **PARK ASSIST OFF**

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

### **SERVICE AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP**

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

### **SERVICE DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM**

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Active Emergency Braking System, Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing, and/or Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system may not work. Do not use these systems until the vehicle has been repaired.

### **SERVICE FRONT CAMERA**

If this message remains on after continued driving, the vehicle needs service. Do not use the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) features. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### **SERVICE PARK ASSIST**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your retailer for service.

### **SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT OFF**

This message indicates that the driver has turned the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system off.

### **SERVICE SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM**

If this message remains on after continued driving, the vehicle needs service. Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) features will not work. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

## **SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE**

This message indicates that Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) are disabled either because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in the blind zone, or the vehicle is passing through an open area, such as the desert, where there is insufficient data for operation. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care on page 10-78*.

## **Ride Control System Messages**

### **SERVICE ALL WHEEL DRIVE**

This message displays when there is a problem with the All Wheel Drive (AWD) system. This message could be set by a number of issues. Some may require service of the AWD system some will not. The vehicle will run in normal two-wheel drive mode when this message has been set. This could be caused by:

- A vehicle or an AWD system electronics problem.
- Various vehicle electrical issues.
- Worn out or overheated clutch plates.
- Loss of fluids.

If this message appears, stop when convenient and turn off the ignition for 30 seconds. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message has gone off and stays off, it is not necessary to take your vehicle to

the dealer. If the message still displays or appears again when you begin driving, the system needs service. See your dealer.

### **SERVICE STABILITRAK**

This message displays if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*.

### **SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

This message displays if there is a problem with the selective ride control. See *Selective Ride Control on page 9-31*.

### **SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL**

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*.



### **SPORT MODE ON**

This message displays when Sport Mode has been activated. See *Selective Ride Control on page 9-31* and *Manual Mode on page 9-23*.

### **TRACTION CONTROL OFF**

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*.

### **TRACTION CONTROL ON**

This message displays when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned on. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*.

## **Airbag System Messages**

### **SERVICE AIRBAG**

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## **Security Messages**

### **THEFT ATTEMPTED**

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

## **Service Vehicle Messages**

### **SERVICE AC SYSTEM**

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE POWER STEERING**

This message displays if there is a problem with the power steering system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK**

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE VEHICLE SOON**

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## **Starting the Vehicle Messages**

### **PRESS BRAKE TO START VEHICLE**

This message is displayed when attempting to start the vehicle without first pressing the brake pedal.

### **SERVICE KEYLESS START SYSTEM**

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the pushbutton start system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN**

This message may display when you try to start the vehicle, but the column remains locked. Try turning

the steering wheel while starting the vehicle to unlock the steering column. If the vehicle still does not start, turn the steering wheel the other way, and try starting the vehicle again.

## **Tyre Messages**

### **SERVICE TYRE MONITOR SYSTEM**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45*.

### **TYRE LEARNING ACTIVE**

This message displays when the system is learning new tyres. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45*.

### **TYRE LOW ADD AIR TO TYRE**

This message displays when the pressure in one or more of the tyres is low.

This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate the location of the low tyre.

The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tyre Pressure Light on page 5-22*.

If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Inflate the tyres by adding air until the tyre pressure is equal to the values shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyres on page 10-40*, *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8*, and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-42*.

You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. The DIC also shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25*.

## **Transmission Messages**

### **SERVICE TRANSMISSION**

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

### **SHIFT DENIED**

This message displays when using the Driver Shift Control (DSC) and attempting to shift to a gear not appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). See *Manual Mode on page 9-23*.

### **SHIFT TO PARK**

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when attempting to remove the key from the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

### **TRANSMISSION HOT - IDLE ENGINE**

This message displays and a chime sounds if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

### **Vehicle Reminder Messages**

#### **ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE**

This message is displayed when ice conditions are possible.

#### **TURN WIPER CONTROL TO INTERMITTENT FIRST**

This message is displayed when attempting to adjust the intermittent wiper speed without intermittent

selected on the wiper control. See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.

### **Vehicle Speed Messages**

#### **SELECTED SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED**

This message is displayed when the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed. See "Speed Warning" under *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25*.

### **Washer Fluid Messages**

#### **WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID**

This message may display when the washer fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.


## **Vehicle Personalisation**

Use the audio system controls to access the personalisation menus for customising vehicle features.

The following are all possible personalisation features. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

### **Infotainment System Audio System Controls**

To access the personalisation menu:

1. Press **SETTINGS** on the Home page on the infotainment system display.
2. Press the desired feature to display a list of available options.
3. Press to select the desired feature setting.
4. Press the  **Back** screen button to return to the previous menu.

### Personalisation Menus

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Time and Date
- Language [Language]
- Valet Mode
- Radio
- Vehicle
- Bluetooth
- Voice
- Display
- Rear Camera
- Return to Factory Settings
- Software Information

Each menu is detailed in the following information.

#### Time and Date

Manually set the time and date. See *Clock on page 5-5*.

### Language [Language]

Select Language, then select from the available language(s).

The selected language will display on the system, and voice recognition will reflect the selected language.

#### Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system, the infotainment controls, and screen storage location.

To turn Valet Mode on and off, Enter a four-digit code on the keypad. Press Enter to go to the confirmation screen. Re-enter the four-digit code. Press LOCK to lock the system. Enter the four-digit code to unlock the system. Press the Back screen button to go back to the previous menu.

#### Radio

Press to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites

- Number of Favourites Pages
- Audible Touch Feedback
- Bose Audio Pilot
- Maximum Start Up Volume

#### Manage Favourites

This allows favourites to be edited. See “Manage Favourites in “Settings” under “Radio” in the infotainment manual.

#### Number of Favourites Pages

Press to set the number of favourites to display.

Select the desired number or select Auto and the infotainment system will automatically adjust the number of favourite shown.

#### Audible Touch Feedback

This allows Audible Touch Feedback to be turned on or off. Select Off or On.

### **Bose Audio Pilot**

This feature adjusts the volume based on the noise in the vehicle. See “Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology” under “Infotainment System Settings” in the infotainment manual.

### **Maximum Startup Volume**

This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, press + or – to increase or decrease.

### **Vehicle**

Select and the following may display:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Comfort and Convenience
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks

- Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

### **Climate and Air Quality**

Select and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Max Speed
- Air Quality Sensor
- Auto Compartment Zone Temp
- Remote Start Auto Seat Cool
- Remote Start Auto Heated Seats
- Auto Demist

### **Auto Fan Max Speed**

This feature will set the maximum auto fan speed.

Select Low, Medium, or High.

### **Air Quality Sensor**

This allows for selection of air quality sensor operation at high or low sensitivity.

Select Off, Low Sensitivity, or High Sensitivity.

### **Auto Compartment Zone Temp**

This feature allows for selection of the compartment zone temperature setting when the vehicle is restarted.

Select Single Zone, Dual Zone, or Last Setting.

### **Remote Start Auto Seat Cool**

When on, this feature will turn the cooled seats on when using remote start on warm days.

Select Off or On.

### **Remote Start Auto Heated Seats**

When on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On.

### **Auto Demist**

When set to On, the front defog will automatically come on when the vehicle is started.

Select Off or On.

## Collision/Detection Systems

Select the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following may display, if equipped:

- Alert Type
- Auto Collision Preparation
- Go Notifier
- Side Blind Zone Alert
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert

### Alert Type

This feature will set crash alerts to beeps or seat vibrations. This setting affects all crash alerts including Forward Collision, Lane Departure Warning, Adaptive Cruise Control, Parking Assist, and Reversing Warning alerts.

Select Beeps or Safety Alert Seat. See *Driver Assistance Systems* on page 9-42.

### Auto Collision Preparation

This feature will turn on or off the Forward Collision Alert feature as well as the Automatic Braking

capability of the Auto Collision Preparation feature. With the Alert & Brake setting, both Forward Collision Alert as well as the Automatic Braking capability of the Auto Collision Preparation feature are available. The Alert setting disables most automatic braking functions of the Auto Collision Preparation feature. Some last-second automatic braking capability is still provided with the Alert setting, but it is much less likely to be triggered by most driving conditions. Off disables all Forward Collision Alert and Automatic Braking capabilities of the Auto Collision Preparation feature. See *Active Emergency Braking System* on page 9-48.

Select Off, Alert & Brake, or Alert.

### Go Notifier

This feature will give a reminder that Adaptive Cruise Control provides when it has brought the vehicle to a complete stop behind another

stopping vehicle, and then that vehicle drives on. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-34.

Select Off or On.

### Side Blind Zone Alert

This allows the Side Blind Zone Alert feature to be turned on or off. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* on page 9-50.

Select Off or On.

### Rear Cross Traffic Alert

This allows the Rear Cross Traffic Alert feature to be turned on or off. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing* on page 9-43.

Select Off or On.

## Comfort and Convenience

Select the Comfort and Convenience menu and the following may display:

- Auto Memory Recall
- Easy Exit Options
- Chime Volume

## 5-42 Instruments and Controls

---

- Reverse Tilt Mirror
- Rain Sense Wipers
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

### Auto Memory Recall

This allows the Auto Memory Recall feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off, On, On - Driver Door Open, or On - At Ignition On. See *Memory Seats on page 3-6*.

### Easy Exit Options

This allows the Easy Exit Options feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

See *Memory Seats on page 3-6*.

### Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Press + or - to adjust the volume.

### Reverse Tilt Mirror

When on, both the driver and passenger outside mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is

shifted to R (Reverse) to improve visibility of the ground near the rear wheels. They will return to their previous driving position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) or the engine is turned off.

Select Off, On, On - Driver and Passenger, On - Driver, or On - Passenger.

### Rain Sense Wipers

This allows the Rain Sense Wipers feature to be disabled or enabled.

Select Disabled or Enabled.

### Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

When on, and the front windscreen wipers are on, the rear window wiper will turn on automatically when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

Select On or Off.


### Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following may display:

- Vehicle Locator Lights

- Exit Lighting
- Auto Main Beam Assist

### Vehicle Locator Lights

This feature will flash the exterior lamps when  on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed to locate the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

### Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Select Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

### Auto Main Beam Assist

When on, the IntelliBeam system will turn the vehicle's main beam headlamps on and off according to the surrounding traffic conditions. See "IntelliBeam System" in *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, Normal Sensitivity, or Low Sensitivity.

### **Power Door Locks**

Select Power Door Locks and the following may display:

- Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out
- Auto Door Unlock
- Delayed Door Lock

### **Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out**

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If Off is selected, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

Select Off or On.

### **Auto Door Unlock**

This allows selection of which of the doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Select Off, All Doors, or Driver Door.

### **Delayed Door Lock**

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors. To override the delay, press the power door lock switch on the door.

Select Off or On.

### **Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**

Select Remote Lock, Unlock, Start and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Start Auto Cool Seats
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

### **Remote Unlock Light Feedback**

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.


Select Off or Flash Lights.

### **Remote Lock Feedback**

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

### **Remote Door Unlock**

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing  on the RKE transmitter.

Select All Doors or Driver Door Only.

### **Remote Start Auto Cool Seats**

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the ventilated seats on when using remote start on warm days.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, On - Driver and Passenger, or On - Driver.



## 5-44 Instruments and Controls

---

### Remote Start Auto Heat Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, On - Driver and Passenger, or On - Driver.

### Passive Door Unlock

This allows the selection of what doors will unlock when using the button on the driver door to unlock the vehicle.

Select All Doors or Driver Door Only.

### Passive Door Lock

This feature can be turned on or off or used to select feedback when using the button on the driver door to lock the vehicle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Select On, On with Horn Chirp, or Off.

### Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

This feature sounds an alert when the RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

### Bluetooth

Select and the following may display:

- Pair New Device
- Device Management
- Ringtones
- Voice Mail Numbers

### Pair New Device

Select to pair a new device. See “Pairing” in “Infotainment Controls” under Bluetooth in the infotainment manual.

### Device Management

Select to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

### Ringtones

Press to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring.

### Voice Mail Numbers

This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. The voice mail number may be changed by selecting EDIT or pressing the EDIT button and typing in a new number, then select SAVE or press the SAVE button.

### Voice

Select and the following may display:

- Confidence Threshold
- Prompt Length
- Audio Feedback Speed

### Confidence Threshold

This feature allows the adjustment of the sensitivity of the speech recognition system.

Select Confirm More or Confirm Less.

### **Prompt Length**

This feature adjusts the voice prompt length.

Select Short or Long.

### **Audio Feedback Speed**

This feature adjusts the audio feedback speed.

Select Slow, Medium, or Fast.

### **Display**

Select and the following may display:

- Mode
- Calibrate Touchscreen
- Turn Display Off

### **Mode**

Select to change the display screen for day or night driving.

Select Auto, Day, or Night.

### **Calibrate Touchscreen**

Select to calibrate the touchscreen, then follow the prompts.

### **Turn Display Off**

Select to turn the display off. Press anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button to turn the display on.

### **Rear Camera**

This allows for Rear Camera Display, Rear Park Assist Symbols, Guidance Lines, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert to be turned off or on.

Select Off or On for the desired feature.

See *Driver Assistance Systems on page 9-42*.

### **Return to Factory Settings**

Select and the following may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings
- Clear All Private Data
- Restore Radio Settings

### **Restore Vehicle Settings**

This allows selection of restoring vehicle settings.

Select Cancel or Restore.

### **Clear All Private Data**

This allows selection to clear all private information from the vehicle.

Select Cancel or Delete.

### **Restore Radio Settings**

This allows selection to restore radio settings.

Select Cancel or Restore.



## Lighting

### Exterior Lighting

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Exterior Lamp Controls .....               | 6-1 |
| Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam<br>Changer ..... | 6-3 |
| Flash-to-Pass .....                        | 6-3 |
| Daytime Running<br>Lamps (DRL) .....       | 6-4 |
| Adaptive Forward<br>Lighting (AFL) .....   | 6-4 |
| Headlamp Levelling Control ...             | 6-5 |
| Twilight Sentinel .....                    | 6-6 |
| Hazard Lights .....                        | 6-7 |
| Turn and Lane-Change<br>Signals .....      | 6-7 |
| Front Fog Lamps .....                      | 6-8 |
| Rear Fog Lamps .....                       | 6-8 |

### Interior Lighting

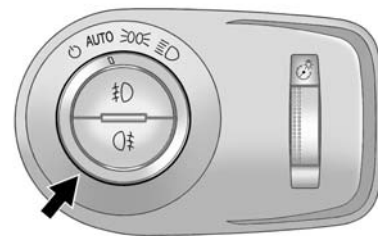
|  |      |
|--|------|
| Instrument Panel Illumination<br>Control ..... | 6-9  |
| Cargo Lamp .....                               | 6-9  |
| Courtesy Lamps .....                           | 6-9  |
| Dome Lamps .....                               | 6-9  |
| Reading Lamps .....                            | 6-10 |

### Lighting Features

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Entry Lighting .....                     | 6-10 |
| Exit Lighting .....                      | 6-10 |
| Battery Load Management ...              | 6-10 |
| Battery Power Protection ....            | 6-11 |
| Exterior Lighting Battery<br>Saver ..... | 6-11 |

## Exterior Lighting

### Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel to the outboard side of the steering column.

Turn the control to the following positions:

**⏻ (Off):** Briefly turn to this position to turn the automatic light control off or on again.

## 6-2 Lighting

---

**AUTO (Automatic):** Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

**☰ (Parking Lamps):** Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

**☰ (Headlamps):** Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights. A warning chime sounds if the driver door is opened when the ignition switch is off and the headlamps are on.

**☰ / ☰ (Front and Rear Fog Lamps):** Press to turn the fog lamps on or off.

See *Front Fog Lamps* on page 6-8 and *Rear Fog Lamps* on page 6-8.

### IntelliBeam® System

If equipped, this system turns the vehicle's main beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the main beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.



This light comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

### Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam

To enable the IntelliBeam system, with the indicator lever in the neutral position, turn the exterior lamp control to AUTO. The blue main beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the main beams are on.

### Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the main beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

There is a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen that automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The main beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's tail lamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that main beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).

- The IntelliBeam system can be disabled by the Main/dipped beam Changer or the Flash-to-Pass feature. If this happens, the Main/dipped beam Changer must be activated two times within five seconds to reactivate the IntelliBeam system. The instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the IntelliBeam is reactivated. See *Headlamp Main/dipped beam Changer on page 6-3* or *Flash-to-Pass on page 6-3*.

The main beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect another vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamps are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamps are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.

- The other vehicle's lamps cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- The vehicle's windscreen is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- The vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and tail lamps.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.

The main beam headlamps may need to be disabled if any of the above conditions exist.

This feature can be turned on or off in vehicle personalisation. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

## Headlamp Main/ Dipped-Beam Changer

Push the indicator lever away from you and release to turn the main beams on. To return to dipped beams, push the stalk again or pull it toward you and release.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

## Flash-to-Pass

The flash-to-pass feature works with the dipped beams on or off.

To flash the main beams, pull the indicator lever all the way toward you, then release it.

## 6-4 Lighting

---

### Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

If equipped, DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

A light sensor on top of the instrument panel makes the DRL work, so be sure it is not covered.

The DRL system makes the dipped beam headlamps come on at a reduced brightness or for vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, the DRL lights will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is in the ON/RUN mode.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The engine is running.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

When the DRL are on, only the dipped beam headlamps, at a reduced level of brightness, will be

on. The main beam headlamps, tail lamps, sidemarker, instrument panel and other lamps will not be on.

The headlamps automatically change from DRL to the regular headlamps depending on the darkness of the surroundings. The other lamps that come on with the headlamps will also come on.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps go off and the DRL come on.

To turn the DRL lamps off or on again, turn the exterior lamp control to the off position and then release.

This vehicle may have a DRL disabling function. When the DRL are on and an indicator is activated, the DRL on that side will be off until the indicator goes off.

### Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

For vehicles with uplevel headlamps, the Adaptive Forward Lighting System (AFL) adjusts the

headlamps to provide greater road illumination in various driving conditions.

To enable AFL, set the exterior lamp control to the AUTO position. To disable, move the control out of AUTO. AFL will operate when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h (2 mph). AFL will not operate in R (Reverse). The vehicle must be driven a short distance for AFL to operate. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

### Curve Lighting

The light beam pivots based on the steering wheel position and vehicle speed of at least 10 km/h (6 mph). The headlamps shine at an angle of up to 15 degrees to the right or left of the direction of travel.

### Motorway Lighting

If the vehicle is travelling straight continuously at high speeds, the light beam automatically raises slightly to increase the headlamp range.

### City Lighting

If the vehicle speed is less than 50 km/h (31 mph), the headlamp range is automatically reduced.

### Tourist Lighting

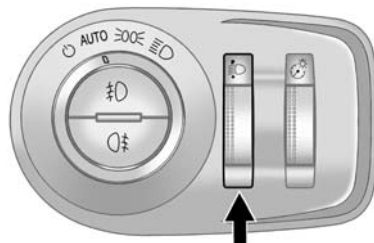
For reducing glare to oncoming traffic when driving a left hand drive vehicle in a right hand drive country or vice versa. To activate tourist lighting:

1. Pull the indicator lever toward you and hold.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Wait for three seconds or until the AFL indicator flashes and a sound is heard.
4. Release the stalk.

Each time the ignition is turned on, the AFL indicator will flash.

To deactivate tourist lighting, repeat the steps. The AFL indicator will not flash when tourist lighting has been deactivated.


### Headlamp Levelling Control



#### Manual Headlamp Levelling Control

For vehicles with manual headlamp levelling control, the thumbwheel is on the exterior lamp control. This feature lets the headlamp level be adjusted to suit the vehicle load.

The dipped beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp level.

 **(Headlamp Levelling):** Move the thumbwheel up or down to adjust the headlamps.

Correct adjustment of the headlamp level can reduce the glare for other drivers.

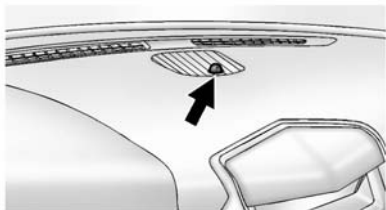
- Front seats occupied = 0.
- All seats occupied = 1.
- All seats occupied and luggage compartment load = 2.
- Driver seat occupied and luggage compartment load = 3.

#### Automatic Headlamp Levelling Control

For vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, the level of the headlamps is adjusted automatically based on vehicle load.



### Twilight Sentinel



This feature automatically turns the lamps on and off. A light sensor on top of the instrument panel makes the Twilight Sentinel® work, so be sure it is not covered.


With Twilight Sentinel the following will happen:

- When it is dark enough outside, the headlamps and parking lamps come on. The other lamps that come on with the headlamps also come on.
- When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps go off, as long as the exterior lamp switch is in the AUTO position.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. If it is light outside when the vehicle leaves the garage, there is a slight delay before the automatic headlamp system changes. During that delay, the instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* on page 6-9.

The vehicle can be idled with the lamps off, even when it is dark outside. After starting the vehicle, turn the exterior lamp control to off, then release it. The lamps will remain off until the control is turned to off again.

Twilight Sentinel also provides exterior illumination as you leave the vehicle until:

- The exterior lamp control is moved from  to the parking lamp position, or

- The delay time selected has elapsed.



See *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38 to select the delay time or no delay time.

If the ignition is turned off with the exterior lamp control in the parking lamp or headlamp position, the Twilight Sentinel delay will not occur. The lamps will turn off as soon as the control is turned off.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

### Lights On with Wipers

If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off.

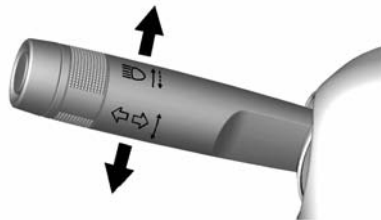
Move the exterior lamp control to  or  to disable this feature.

## Hazard Lights



**⚠ (Hazard Warning Indicators):** Press this button on the instrument panel, to make the front and rear indicator lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble. Press again to turn the flashers off.

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. The indicator flashes three times.

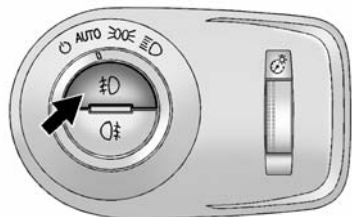
The stalk returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signalling a turn or lane change the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burned out.

Replace any burned out bulbs. If a bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* on page 10-32.

## 6-8 Lighting

### Front Fog Lamps



The front fog lamp button is on the exterior lamp control, on the outboard side of the steering wheel.

The ignition and the dipped beam headlamps must be on to turn on the fog lamps.

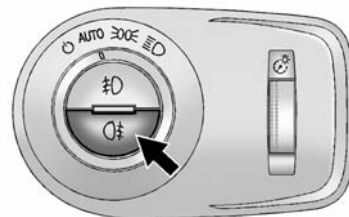
**☰ (Front Fog Lamps):** Press to turn the fog lamps on or off. An indicator light on the instrument cluster comes on when the fog lamps are on.

The fog lamps come on together with the parking lamps.

In Scandinavian countries, the front fog lamps will turn off while the dipped beam headlamps are in use.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

### Rear Fog Lamps



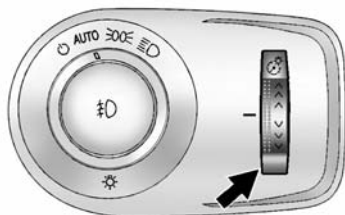
The rear fog lamp button is on the exterior lamp control, on the outboard side of the steering wheel.

The ignition and the front fog lamps or headlamps must be on to turn the rear fog lamps on.


**☷ (Rear Fog Lamps):** Press to turn the rear fog lamps on or off. An indicator light on the instrument cluster comes on when the rear fog lamps are on.

## Interior Lighting

### Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lights and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

 **(Instrument Panel Brightness):** Move and hold the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

### Cargo Lamp

The cargo lamp is located in the rear compartment and is controlled by the dome lamp. See *Dome Lamps* on page 6-9.

### Courtesy Lamps


The courtesy lamps come on automatically when any door is opened and the dome lamp is in the door position.


### Dome Lamps

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

 **(Dome Lamp Override):** Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.



 **(Door):** The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

 **(On):** Turns the dome lamp on.

### Reading Lamps



There are reading lamps in the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on automatically when any door is opened.

To manually turn the reading lamps on or off:

- Press  or  next to each overhead console reading lamp.
- Press the lamp lens on the rear passenger reading lamps.

### Lighting Features

#### Entry Lighting

The headlamps, tail lamps, number plate lamps, interior lamps, and most of the interior lights turn on briefly at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when  is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, and then the dome and remaining interior lights dim to off. The entry lighting can be manually turned off by changing the ignition out of the off position, or by pressing  on the RKE transmitter.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

#### Exit Lighting

The headlamps, tail lamps, parking lamps, and number plate lamps come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when a door is

opened after the ignition is turned off. The dome lamps also come on when the driver door is opened after the ignition is changed to the off position.

The exterior lamps and dome lamp remain on after the door is closed for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

The exterior lamps turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamps control to off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

### Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM) that estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gauge or a voltage display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all of the power needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed and it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-28*.

## Battery Power Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

If some interior lamps are left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after some time.

## Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10-minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the off position and then back to the parking lamp or headlamp position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position.



# Infotainment System

## Introduction

Infotainment ..... 7-1

## Introduction

### Infotainment

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings and downloadable applications (if equipped).





## Climate Controls

### Climate Control Systems

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Dual Automatic Climate Control System ..... | 8-1 |
| Rear Climate Control System .....           | 8-6 |

### Air Vents

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| Air Vents ..... | 8-7 |
|-----------------|-----|

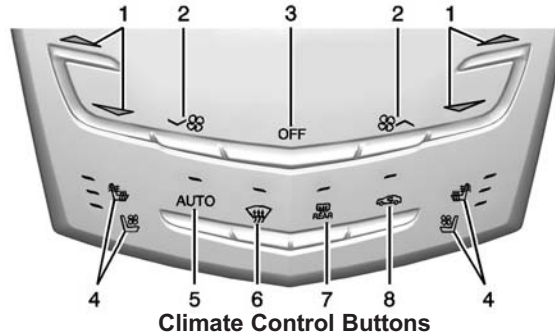
### Maintenance

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter ..... | 8-8 |
|--|-----|

## Climate Control Systems

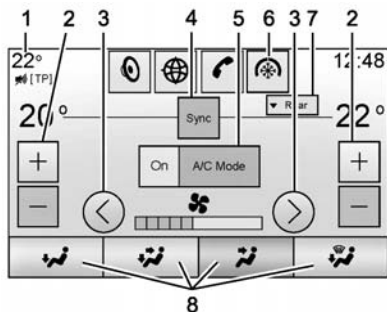
### Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The climate control buttons and the touch screen are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls                      | 5. AUTO (Automatic Operation) |
| 2. Fan Control  | 6. Defrost                    |
| 3. OFF (Fan)  | 7. Rear Window Demister       |
| 4. Driver and Passenger Heated and Ventilated Seats (If Equipped) | 8. Recirculation              |

## 8-2 Climate Controls



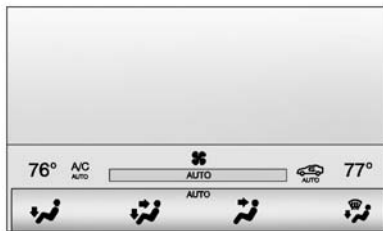
### Climate Touch Screen Controls

1. Outside Temperature Display
2. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)
5. A/C Mode (Air Conditioning)
6. Climate Control Selection (Application Tray Button)
7. Rear (Rear Climate Control Touch Screen)
8. Air Delivery Mode Control

### Climate Control Touch Screen

The fan, air delivery mode, air conditioning, driver and passenger temperatures and SYNC settings can be controlled by pressing CLIMATE on the infotainment home screen or the climate button in the touch screen application tray. A selection can then be made on the front climate control page displayed. See the infotainment manual.

### Climate Control Status Screen



The climate control status screen appears briefly when the climate control buttons on the faceplate are adjusted. The air delivery mode can be adjusted on the climate control status screen.

### Automatic Operation


The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on or AUTO is displayed on the touch screen, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and the display will show the selected settings. Auto operation can be turned off individually for climate settings.


For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.

- Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press  to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

**OFF (Fan):** Press to turn the fan on or off. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.



 **(Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls):** The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature.

The driver and passenger temperatures can also be adjusted by pressing the controls on the touch screen.

### SYNC (Synchronised


**Temperature):** Press SYNC on the touch screen to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC button is displayed when the temperatures are unlinked.


### Manual Operation


 or  **(Fan Control):** Press the fan control buttons or the touch screen fan control, to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the buttons or the touch screen control to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan and climate control system, press and hold the fan down button or touch screen fan control until it is off.


**Air Delivery Mode Control:** When the climate information is displayed, press the desired air delivery mode on the touch screen to change the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode button is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

 **(Vent):** Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.



 **(Bi-Level):** Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

 **(Floor):** Air is directed to the floor outlets.

 **(Demist):** Clears the windows of mist or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen and floor outlets.

## 8-4 Climate Controls

---

 (**Defrost**): Clears the windscreen of mist or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windscreen. Press the  button to turn on or off. Changing the air delivery mode also turns the defrost off.

### **AC Mode (Air Conditioning):**

Press the AC Mode touch screen control to turn the automatic air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed.


### **Automatic Air Recirculation:**

When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air inside the vehicle may automatically recirculate as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

If equipped, an air quality sensor may also activate recirculation when it detects increasing levels of poor

quality air outside the vehicle. The air quality sensor will not maintain recirculation for an extended period and may not activate during cold weather. To adjust the sensitivity of the air quality sensor, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

The air quality sensor system does not protect against carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. See *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-20.


 (**Recirculation**): Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or prevent outside air and odours from entering.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

**Auto Defog:** The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window misting, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Demist off or on, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

### **Rear Window Demister**

 (**Rear Window Demister**): Press to turn the rear window demister on or off.



The rear window demister turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again, it runs for about five minutes before turning off.



The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister button is on and help to clear mist or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

 **Caution**

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Driver and Passenger Heated and Ventilated Seats (If Equipped):**

Press  or  to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and backrest.

Press  or  to ventilate the driver or passenger seat. See *Heated and Ventilated Seats on page 1-8*.

**Remote Start Climate Control**

**Operation:** If equipped, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear demist indicator light does not come on during a remote start. If the vehicle has heated or ventilated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* and *Heated and Ventilated Seats on page 1-8*.

The rear window demister turns on if it is cold outside.

**Sensor**

The solar sensor, located on top of the instrument panel near the windshield, monitors the solar heat.

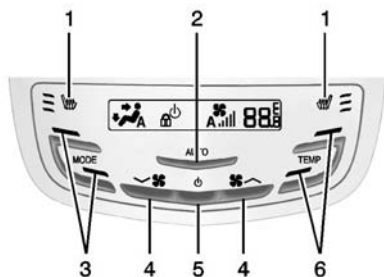
The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

## 8-6 Climate Controls

### Rear Climate Control System

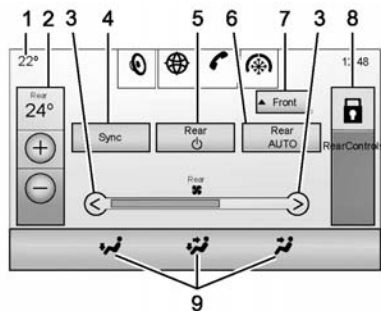
If equipped with a rear climate control system, the settings can be adjusted with the rear climate control buttons and the touch screen.



#### Rear Climate Control Buttons

1. Heated Rear Seats (If Equipped)
2. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
3. Air Delivery Mode Control
4. Fan Control

5. (On/Off)
6. TEMP (Temperature Control)



#### Rear Climate Touch Screen Controls

1. Outside Temperature Display
2. Rear Climate Temperature Control
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronised Temperatures)
5. REAR (On/Off)

6. Rear AUTO (Automatic Operation)
7. Front (Front Climate Control Touch Screen)
8. Rear Control Lockout
9. Air Delivery Mode Control

**Rear:** Press this button on the front climate control touch screen to open the rear climate control screen. The rear climate control settings can now be adjusted from the front passenger area.

**(On/Off):** Press or REAR to turn the rear climate control on or off. The rear climate control system can also be turned off by pressing the fan down button until the system turns off. If the rear climate control is turned off using REAR on the touch screen, the button on the rear climate control faceplate must be pressed twice to turn the system back on.



**SYNC:** Press the SYNC button on the touch screen to match the rear climate control temperature to the front climate control driver temperature. The SYNC button will be lit. Press the TEMP, MODE, or AUTO button twice to unlink the set driver and rear temperatures. The SYNC button turns off.

**Rear Control Lockout:** Press to lock or unlock control of the rear climate control system from the rear seat passengers. When locked the rear climate control can only be adjusted from the front seat.


### Automatic Operation





**Rear AUTO:** Press to turn on or off. The air delivery and fan speed are controlled automatically. The AUTO indicator appears on the display. If any of the climate control settings are manually adjusted, this cancels full automatic operation.

### Manual Operation

**<  > (Fan Control):** Press briefly or press and hold the rear climate control buttons or touch screen to increase or decrease the airflow. Pressing  > when the system is off will turn the system on. The air delivery mode remains in its previous setting.

**+/- (Temperature Control):** Press briefly or press and hold the rear temperature control buttons or touch screen to adjust the rear passenger temperature. Press + for warmer air and press - for cooler air.

**   (Air Delivery Mode Control):** Press the desired mode button on the touch screen or the MODE button on the rear faceplate to change the direction of the airflow in the rear seating area.

** or  (Heated Rear Seats, If Equipped):** Press  or  to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion and seatback. See *Heated Rear Seats on page 3-10*.

### Air Vents

Move the sliding knob on the air outlets up and down or left and right to direct the airflow. Use the thumbwheels near the air outlets to open or close off the airflow.

### Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved bonnet air flow deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not insert any objects in the outlets, as failure of the mechanism may occur.



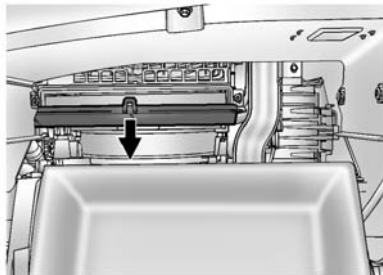
### Maintenance

#### Passenger Compartment Air Filter

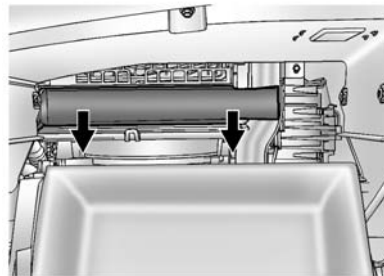
The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*. To find out what type of filter to use, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-6*.

1. Open the glove box completely and remove the four screws along the upper portion of the glove box.
2. When released, lower the upper portion of the glove box.
3. Locate the service door for the passenger compartment air filter.



4. Release the two latches holding the service door. Lower the service door.



5. Remove the old air filter.
6. Install the new air filter.
7. Close the service door and latches.
8. Reinstall the upper portion of the glove box.

See your dealer if additional assistance is needed.

# Driving and Operating

## Driving Information

|                               |     |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Defensive Driving .....       | 9-2 |
| Control of a Vehicle .....    | 9-2 |
| Braking .....                 | 9-2 |
| Steering .....                | 9-3 |
| Off-Road Recovery .....       | 9-3 |
| Loss of Control .....         | 9-4 |
| Driving on Wet Roads .....    | 9-4 |
| Highway Hypnosis .....        | 9-5 |
| Hill and Mountain Roads ..... | 9-5 |
| Winter Driving .....          | 9-6 |
| If the Vehicle Is Stuck ..... | 9-8 |
| Vehicle Load Limits .....     | 9-8 |

## Starting and Operating

|   |      |
|---|------|
| New Vehicle Run-In .....                  | 9-13 |
| Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal ..... | 9-13 |
| Ignition Positions .....                  | 9-14 |
| Starting the Petrol Engine ...            | 9-15 |
| Engine Heater .....                       | 9-17 |
| Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....      | 9-18 |

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| Shifting Into Park .....            | 9-18 |
| Shifting out of Park .....          | 9-19 |
| Parking over Things That Burn ..... | 9-20 |

## Engine Exhaust

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Engine Exhaust .....                   | 9-20 |
| Running the Vehicle While Parked ..... | 9-21 |

## Automatic Transmission

|                             |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Automatic Transmission .... | 9-21 |
| Manual Mode .....           | 9-23 |
| Fuel Economy Mode .....     | 9-24 |

## Drive Systems

|                       |      |
|-----------------------|------|
| All-Wheel Drive ..... | 9-25 |
|-----------------------|------|

## Brakes

|                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Antilock Brake System (ABS) ..... | 9-26 |
| Parking Brake .....               | 9-27 |
| Brake Assist .....                | 9-28 |
| Hill Start Assist (HSA) .....     | 9-28 |

## Ride Control Systems

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ..... | 9-29 |
| Limited-Slip Rear Axle .....                        | 9-31 |
| Selective Ride Control .....                        | 9-31 |

## Cruise Control

|                              |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| Cruise Control .....         | 9-32 |
| Adaptive Cruise Control .... | 9-34 |

## Driver Assistance Systems

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Driver Assistance Systems .....                   | 9-42 |
| Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing ..... | 9-43 |
| Assistance Systems for Driving .....              | 9-45 |
| Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System .....        | 9-45 |
| Active Emergency Braking System .....             | 9-48 |
| Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) .....                | 9-50 |
| Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....                | 9-51 |

## Fuel

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Fuel .....                              | 9-54 |
| Recommended Fuel .....                  | 9-54 |
| Fuel Additives .....                    | 9-54 |
| Filling the Tank .....                  | 9-55 |
| Filling a Portable Fuel Container ..... | 9-56 |

## 9-2 Driving and Operating

---

### Trailer Towing

|                             |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| General Towing              |      |
| Information .....           | 9-57 |
| Driving Characteristics and |      |
| Towing Tips .....           | 9-57 |
| Trailer Towing .....        | 9-60 |
| Towing Equipment .....      | 9-61 |
| Trailer Sway                |      |
| Control (TSC) .....         | 9-64 |

### Conversions and Add-Ons

|                   |      |
|-------------------|------|
| Add-On Electrical |      |
| Equipment .....   | 9-64 |

## Driving Information

### Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See *Safety Belts on page 3-11*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

### Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

## Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some

power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

## Steering

### Hydraulic Power Steering

This vehicle has hydraulic power steering. It may require maintenance. See *Power Steering Fluid* on page 10-17.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or because of a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

#### Caution

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 15 seconds,

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

### Bend Tips

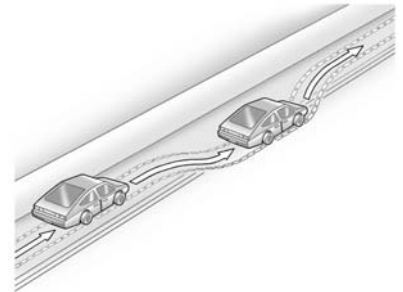
- Take bends at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a bend.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the bend.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the bend before accelerating gently into the straight.

### Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

### Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.

## 9-4 Driving and Operating

---

2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tyre contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

### Loss of Control

#### Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid - wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid - too much speed or steering in a bend causes tyres to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid - too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognise warning clues - such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface - and slow down when you have any doubt.

- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tyres to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

### Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.



#### Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

**Aquaplaning**

Aquaplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tyres so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is aquaplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about aquaplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

**Other Rainy Weather Tips**

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Overtake with caution.
- Keep windscreen wiping equipment in good condition.
- Keep the windscreen washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tyres with proper tread depth. See *Tyres on page 10-40*.
- Turn off cruise control.

**Highway Hypnosis**

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving - scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

**Hill and Mountain Roads**

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tyres, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

### Warning

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

### Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the centre of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, overtaking or no-overtaking zones) and take appropriate action.

## Winter Driving

### Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tyres and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tyres slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tyres even more.

If equipped, Traction Control should be turned on. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* on page 9-26 improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are

clear. Avoid sudden steering manoeuvres and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

### Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

 **Warning**

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems”.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-20*.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.



### If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

#### Warning

If the vehicle's tyres spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

### Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle* on page 10-74.

### Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all non-factory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry, the Tyre and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

#### Warning

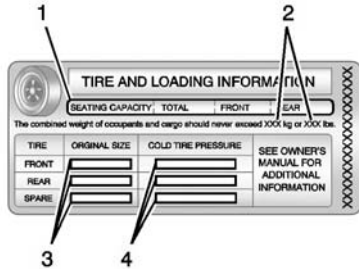
Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

**Tyre and Loading Information Label**



**Label Example**

A vehicle-specific Tyre and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's centre

pillar (B-pillar). With the driver door open, you will find the label attached near the door lock post. The Tyre and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tyre and Loading Information label also shows the tyre size of the original equipment tyres (3) and the recommended cold tyre inflation pressures (4). For more information on tyres and inflation see *Tyres on page 10-40* and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-42*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight

Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See "Certification Label" later in this section.

**"Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–**

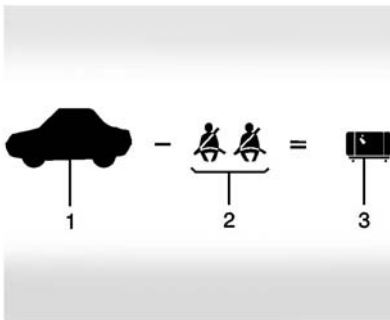
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and

## 9-10 Driving and Operating

there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

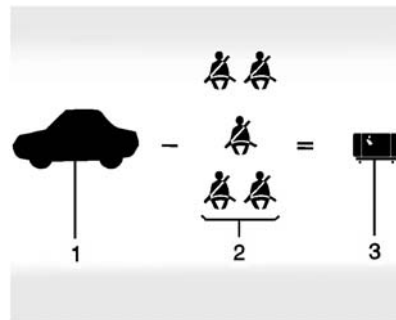
- Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

See *Trailer Towing on page 9-60* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.



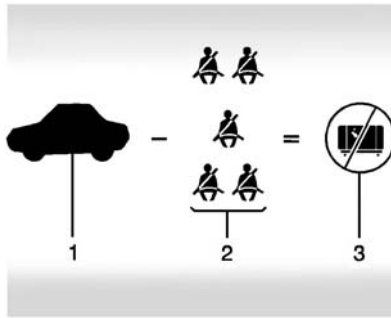
**Example 1**

- Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
- Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs)  $\times$  2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
- Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).



**Example 2**

- Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
- Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs)  $\times$  5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
- Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).



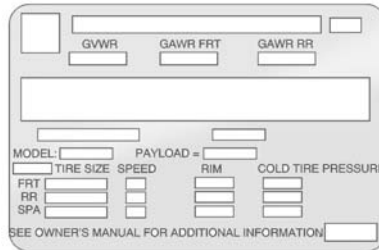
**Example 3**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tyre and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and

seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

**Certification Label**



**Label Example**

A vehicle-specific Certification/ Tyre label is attached to the driver side centre pillar (B-pillar). The label shows the size of the vehicle's original tyres and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of the vehicle. This is called

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

The Certification/Tyre label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on the front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh the vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out the load equally on both sides of the centre line.

Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

Note that your vehicle may have two certification labels. One U.S. certification label and one European certification label. Be sure to reference your European label for information.

## 9-12 Driving and Operating

If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load, it should be spread out. See “Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit” earlier in this section.

### Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your vehicle can carry.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

### Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

## Starting and Operating

### New Vehicle Run-In

#### Caution

The vehicle does not need an elaborate run-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 805 km (500 mi). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 322 km (200 mi) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this

(Continued)

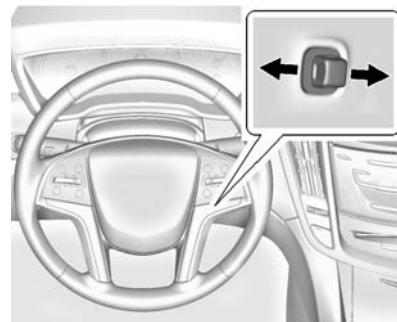
#### Caution (Continued)

breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.

Following run-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

### Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

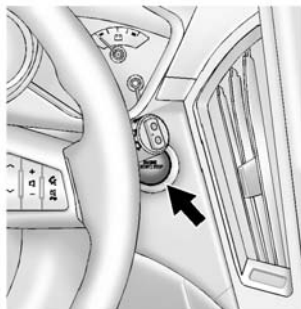
If the vehicle has this feature, the position of the throttle and brake pedals can be adjusted.



The switch used to adjust the pedals is located on the right side of the steering column, below the wiper stalk. Pull the switch toward you to move the pedals further from the floor, or push the switch away from you to move the pedals closer to the floor.

Adjust the throttle and brake pedals while the vehicle is in P (Park) without pressing on the pedals. The pedals cannot be adjusted while the vehicle is in R (Reverse) or when cruise control is engaged. The throttle and brake pedals can also be adjusted while driving.

### Ignition Positions



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes, ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START and STOPPING THE ENGINE/LOCK/OFF.

If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio aerial signal causing interference to the keyless entry system. See *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-32*.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ON/RUN mode and the brake pedal must be applied.

**STOPPING THE ENGINE/LOCK/OFF (No Indicator Light):** When the vehicle is stopped, press the ENGINE START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-18*.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ACCESSORY and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25*. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the ignition is switched to off and either front door is opened. An audible sound may

be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock can bind with the wheels turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start, and a DIC message will be displayed. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. See *Starting the Vehicle Messages on page 5-36*. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting

to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.

3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF. On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to the LOCK/OFF position.
4. Apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-27*.

### Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assistance in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/

STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

**ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light):** This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied, will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to OFF after 10 minutes to prevent battery run down.

**ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light):** This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Petrol Engine on page 9-15*. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN.

### Service Only Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

### Starting the Petrol Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear by moving the gear lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral).



 **Caution**

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

 **Caution**

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position while starting the vehicle, damage may occur to the hydraulic power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be inside the vehicle for the ignition to work.

Mobile phone chargers can interfere with the operation of the Keyless Access System. Battery chargers should not be plugged in when starting or turning off the engine.

To start the vehicle:

### Starting Procedure

1. With the brake pedal applied, press the ENGINE START/ STOP button on the instrument panel. See *Ignition Positions* on page 9-14.

2. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button and the engine cranks automatically until it starts.

If the transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display NO REMOTE DETECTED. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

If the battery in the RKE transmitter needs replacing, the DIC displays REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY. The vehicle can still be driven. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-3.

3. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

4. If the engine does not start and no DIC message is displayed, wait 15 seconds before trying again to let the cranking motor cool down.

If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  $0^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it could be flooded with too much petrol. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor while cranking for up to 15 seconds.

 **Caution**

Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

When the engine starts, let go of the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra petrol from the engine.

The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. Once cranking has been initiated, the engine continues cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start, cranking automatically stops after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running.

 **Caution**

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* on page 9-64.

## Engine Heater

The engine heater, if available, can help in cold weather conditions at or below  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $0^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the heater at least four hours before starting the vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $0^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

### To Use the Engine Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the bonnet and unwrap the heater's electrical cord. The cord is located near the air cleaner.

## 9-18 Driving and Operating

3. The heater cord requires an adaptor/extension cord, which is available from your dealer. Plug this adaptor/extension cord into the heater's electrical cord.
4. Plug the adaptor/extension cord into a normal, grounded 220-volt AC outlet.
5. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the adaptor/extension cord, and place the heater's electrical cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not it could be damaged.

The length of time the heater should remain plugged in depends on several factors. Ask a dealer in the area where you will be parking the vehicle for the best advice on this.

### Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These accessories can be used after the engine is turned off:

- Infotainment system (up to 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened).
- Power windows, sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets (up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened).

### Shifting Into Park

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 9-27*.
2. Move the gear lever into P (Park) by pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition off.

### Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

#### **Warning**

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly applied. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-18*. If you are towing a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips on page 9-57*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is firmly applied before you leave it. After you have moved the gear lever into P (Park), hold down the regular brake pedal. See if you can move the gear lever away from P (Park) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

### **Torque Lock**

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting Into P (Park)" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, your vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

If you are towing a trailer and parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* on page 9-57.

### **Shifting out of Park**

This vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission shift lock control system. The shift lock control is designed to prevent movement of the gear lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock control is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9-volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting* on page 10-70.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button.
3. Press the shift lever button.
4. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. Hold the brake pedal down and press the gear lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If you still cannot move the gear lever from P (Park), consult your dealer or a professional towing service.

### Parking over Things That Burn

#### Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

### Engine Exhaust

#### Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or exhaust pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

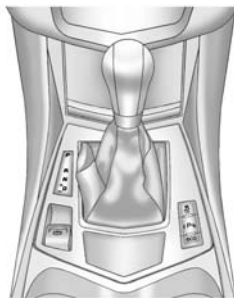
## Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park* on page 9-18 and *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-20.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* on page 9-57.

## Automatic Transmission



There are several different positions for the shift lever.

**P (Park):** This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

### Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly applied. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* on page 9-18 and *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* on page 9-57.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply the

## 9-22 Driving and Operating

regular brakes first and then press the gear lever button before you can shift from P (Park) when the ignition is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the gear lever and push the gear lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park* on page 9-19.

### Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

**R (Reverse):** Use this gear to reverse.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-8*.

**N (Neutral):** In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. You can also use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

### Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

### Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

**D (Drive):** This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for overtaking, and you are:

- Going less than 35 mph (55 km/h), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

The transmission will shift down to a lower gear and have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding. See “Skidding” under *Loss of Control* on page 9-4

 **Caution**

Spinning the tyres or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

## Manual Mode

### Driver Shift Control (DSC)

 **Caution**

Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC.

DSC allows you to shift an automatic transmission similar to a manual gearbox. To use the DSC feature:

1. Move the gear lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode).

If you do not move the gear lever forward or rearward, the vehicle will be in Sport Mode. When you are in Sport Mode the vehicle will still shift automatically. The transmission may remain in a gear longer than it would in the normal driving mode based on braking, throttle input and vehicle lateral acceleration.



SPORT MODE ON will be displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*. The word “sport” will display below the odometer. The gear position will also be indicated in the tachometer.

Within Sport Mode there is a further performance feature called Performance Mode Lift Foot (PMLF) Mode. The feature is activated automatically when sports oriented driving is detected, based on cornering and on/off throttle application. PMLF allows the transmission to hold the current gear instead of upshifting when the throttle is lifted.

2. To enter M (Manual Mode), press the gear lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.

An M will be displayed in the DIC.

3. To return to Sport Mode from M (Manual Mode), press and briefly hold the gear lever forward.

Gear position is indicated in the bottom right corner of the display area in the instrument cluster. The number indicates the requested gear range when moving the shift lever forward or rearward.

While using the DSC feature, the vehicle will have firmer, quicker shifting. You can use this for sport driving or when climbing or descending hills, to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next lower gear if the engine rpm is too high or to the next higher gear when the maximum engine rpm is reached.

If shifting is prevented for any reason, the currently selected gear will flash multiple times, indicating that the transmission has not shifted gears.

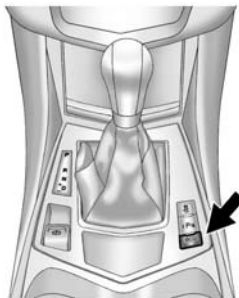
While in the DSC mode, the transmission will automatically downshift when the vehicle comes to a stop. This will allow for more power during take-off.

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to shift into second gear. A higher gear ratio allows you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

### Fuel Economy Mode

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. For driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible, see *Driving for Better Fuel Economy on page 1-18*.

The vehicle may have a fuel economy mode. When engaged, fuel economy mode can improve the vehicle's fuel economy.



Pressing the eco button by the shift lever will engage fuel economy mode. When activated, the eco light in the instrument cluster will come on. See *Fuel Economy Light* on page 5-22. Pressing the button a second time will turn fuel economy mode off.

When fuel economy mode is on:

- The transmission will upshift sooner, and downshift later.
- The torque converter will lock up sooner, and stay on longer.

- The accelerator pedal will be less sensitive.
- The vehicle's computers will more aggressively shut off fuel to the engine under deceleration.
- The engine operates at lower rpms in fuel economy mode, which can increase noise and vibration. This is normal.

## Drive Systems

### All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature transfer torque as required to the rear wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

AWD system performance will be automatically reduced when you use the compact spare. To restore full AWD operation and prevent excessive wear on the system, replace the compact spare with a full-size tyre as soon as possible. See *Compact Spare Tyre* on page 10-69.

## Brakes

### Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* on page 5-19.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle

suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

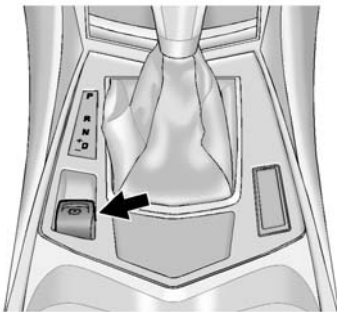
### Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

### Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

## Parking Brake



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is on the centre console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB when the engine is not running.

The system has a red handbrake status light and an amber handbrake warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-18* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-19*.

There are also handbrake-related Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-28*. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red handbrake status light to ensure that the handbrake is applied.

### EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Lift up the EPB switch momentarily.

The red handbrake status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red handbrake status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps

flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red handbrake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-18*.

If the amber handbrake warning light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it up. Continue to hold the switch until the red handbrake status light remains on. If the amber handbrake warning light remains on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held up. If the switch is held up until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

### EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Place the ignition in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push down momentarily on the EPB switch.

The EPB is released when the red handbrake status light is off.

If the amber handbrake warning light is on, release the EPB by pushing down on the EPB switch and holding it down. Continue to hold the switch until the red handbrake status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

#### Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

### Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

If parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* on page 9-57.

### Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature automatically uses the stability

system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

### Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has an HSA feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a gradient. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle

drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a gradient, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

## Ride Control Systems

### Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

#### System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup>, an electronic stability control system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the

vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path. Trailer Sway Control (TSC) is also on automatically when the vehicle is started. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* on page 9-64.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or StabiliTrak begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.


## 9-30 Driving and Operating

See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-8* and “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:


- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), and  comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in

maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If  comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If  comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

### Turning the Systems Off and On







OFF


The button for TCS and StabiliTrak is on the centre stack.




### Caution




Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off only TCS, press and release the  button. The traction off light  displays in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

To turn TCS on again, press and release the  button. The traction off light  displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when the  button is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the  button until the traction off light  and the StabiliTrak OFF light  come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

To turn TCS and StabiliTrak on again, press and release the  button. The traction off light  and the StabiliTrak OFF light  in the instrument cluster turn off. The appropriate message is displayed in the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

## Limited-Slip Rear Axle

Vehicles with a limited-slip rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. When traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle. The limited-slip rear axle also gives the driver enhanced control when cornering hard or completing a manoeuvre, such as a lane change.

## Selective Ride Control

The vehicle may have a ride control system called Selective Ride Control. The setting can be changed at any time. Based on road conditions, steering wheel angle and the vehicle speed, the system automatically adjusts to provide the best handling while providing a smooth ride. The Tour and Sport modes will feel similar on a smooth road.

**Tour:** Use for normal city and highway driving. This setting provides a smooth, soft ride.

**Sport:** Use where road conditions or personal preference demand more control. This setting provides more “feel,” or response to road conditions through increased steering effort and suspension control. Transmission shift points and shift firmness are also enhanced.

The vehicle is normally in the Tour Mode. To switch from Tour Mode to Sport Mode, move the shift lever to the left while the transmission is in D (Drive). Sport Mode is automatically engaged when the shift lever is moved to the left. Moving the shift lever forward or rearward will put the transmission in the Manual (M) Mode.



The Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display SPORT MODE ON when the Sport Mode has been activated. When the shift lever is moved to the right in D (Drive), the system will revert back to Tour Mode. See *Manual Mode on page 9-23* under Automatic Transmission.

If there is a problem detected with Selective Ride Control, SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM displays on the DIC. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-35*. Driving should be adjusted accordingly.

### Cruise Control

#### Warning

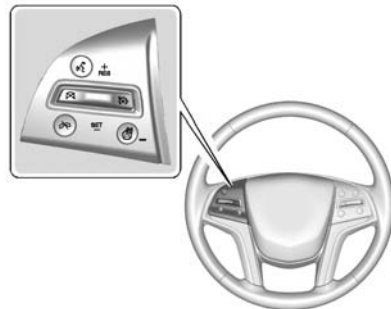
Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.


Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

With cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

If the brakes are applied, the cruise control disengages.

If the StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup> system begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-45*. When road conditions allow the cruise control to be safely used, you can apply the cruise control again.




 **(On/Off):** Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate):**


Press the control up briefly to make the vehicle resume a previously set speed, or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

**SET- (Set/Coast):** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

 **(Cancel):** Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

**Setting Cruise Control**

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get pressed and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control button off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press  to turn the cruise system on.
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Move the control down to SET- and release it.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

When the cruise control has been set to the desired speed, the green cruise control indicator appears on the instrument cluster.

**Resuming a Set Speed**

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, move the control up toward +RES briefly. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

**Increasing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed**

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the control up toward +RES and hold until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, move the control up toward +RES briefly and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) faster.

**Reducing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed**

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the control toward SET- and hold until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, move the control toward SET- briefly.

## 9-34 Driving and Operating

---

Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1.6 km/h (1 mph) slower.

### Overtaking Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly pressing the SET- button will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.



### Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the


vehicle speed down. If the brake is applied, the cruise control disengages.

### Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- To turn off the cruise control, press  on the steering wheel.

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

### Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it allows the driver to select the cruise control set speed and following gap. Read this entire section before using this system. The following gap is the following time between your vehicle and a

vehicle detected directly ahead in your path. If no vehicle is detected in your path, ACC works like regular cruise control. ACC uses camera and radar sensors. See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can apply acceleration or limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If ACC is controlling your vehicle speed when the traction control system (TCS) or electronic stability control system activates, the ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-29*. When road conditions allow ACC to be safely used, the ACC can be turned back on.

ACC will not engage if the TCS or StabiliTrak electronic stability control system is disabled.

**Warning**

ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see “Alerting the Driver” in this section. Complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

**Warning**

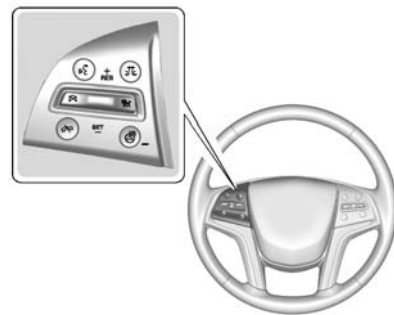
Adaptive Cruise Control will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control when:

- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.
- Visibility is low, such as in fog, rain, or snow conditions. Adaptive Cruise Control performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip.





**ON/OFF:** Press to turn the system on or off. A white cruise control indicator comes on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate):** Press the control up briefly to resume to the previous set speed or hold upwards to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

**SET- (Set/Coast):** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate ACC. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

## 9-36 Driving and Operating

 **(Cancel):** Press to disengage ACC without erasing the set speed from memory.

 **(Follow Distance Gap):** Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

### Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

If cruise control is on when not in use, the cruise control on/off control could get pressed and cruise control could become active when not desired. Keep the cruise control off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for cruise. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path.

ACC will not set at a speed less than 25 km/h (16 mph), although it can be resumed when driving at lower speeds.

To set ACC:

1. Press .

2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release the SET- control on the steering wheel.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.



The ACC indicator displays on the instrument cluster. When the ACC is active, the indicator turns green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

### Resuming a Set Speed

If the ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press +RES up briefly on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

### Increasing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator to get to the higher speed. Press SET- down. Release the control and the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden.

A warning message will appear on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Cruise Control Messages on page 5-29*.

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired set speed appears on the display, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press +RES up briefly. For each press, the vehicle goes 5 km/h (1 mph) faster.

When it is determined that there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is beyond the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

### Reducing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed


If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Press SET– down and release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.
- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.

- To decrease the vehicle speed in smaller increments, press SET– down briefly. For each press, the vehicle goes about 5 km/h (1 mph) slower.

### Selecting the Follow Distance

When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

Press  on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. Subsequent presses cycle the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near.

When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Changing the gap setting automatically changes the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) for the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) feature. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-45*.

### Alerting the Driver



If ACC is engaged driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, six red lights will flash on the windscreen and either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

### Approaching and Following a Vehicle



The vehicle ahead symbol is in the instrument cluster.

The vehicle ahead symbol only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle's path moving in the same direction.

If this symbol is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake to vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow the vehicle in front at the selected follow gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front of you, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary. When braking is active, the brake

lights will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

### Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects

#### **Warning**

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the system may not brake for a vehicle that it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and the driver will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle when:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or electronic stability control system has activated or been disabled.
- There is no traffic and nothing to detect on the side of the road.
- There is a fault in the system.
- The brakes get heated.

A message indicating that cruise is disengaging will appear on the DIC and the ACC active symbol will not be displayed when ACC is no longer active.

### Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a follow time/distance gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead symbol will flash as a reminder. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. See "Alert Type" and "Go Notifier" in "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press +RES or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver safety belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle. The electric parking brake status light will turn on. See *Parking Brake on page 9-27*. To release the electric handbrake, press the accelerator pedal.

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-28*.

### Warning

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

### Warning

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.



## 9-40 Driving and Operating

### ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, a DIC warning message will indicate that automatic braking will not occur. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-28*. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

#### Warning

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

### Bends in the Road

#### Warning

On bends, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle

(Continued)

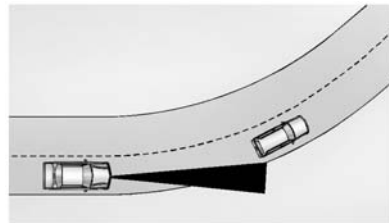
#### Warning (Continued)

accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

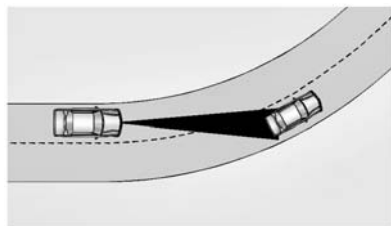
#### Warning

On bends, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra attention in bends and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in bends.

ACC may operate differently in a sharp bend. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the bend is too sharp.



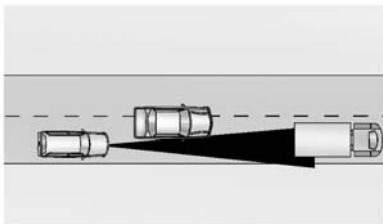
When following a vehicle and entering a bend, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens the vehicle ahead symbol will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

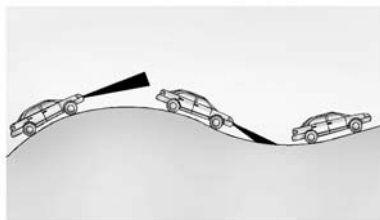
ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a bend. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

### Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brake may need to be manually applied.



### Do Not Use ACC on Hills and When Towing a Trailer




Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills or when towing a trailer. ACC will not detect a vehicle in the lane while driving on steep hills. The driver will often need to take over acceleration and braking on steep hills, especially when towing a trailer. If the brakes are applied, the ACC disengages.

### Ending ACC

There are three ways to end ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Press .

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

### Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the back of the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

For cleaning instructions, see “Washing the Vehicle” under *Exterior Care* on page 10-78.

System operation may also be limited under snow, heavy rain or road spray conditions.

### Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

#### **Warning**

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* on page 9-2.

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

### Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Comfort and Convenience” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-38.

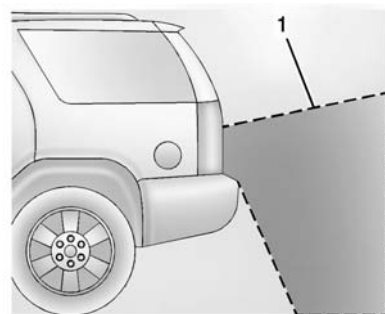
### Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), the Rear Vision Camera (RVC) and Rear Parking Assist may help the driver to avoid a crash or to reduce crash damage. Some models may also have Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), and/or Front Parking Assist.

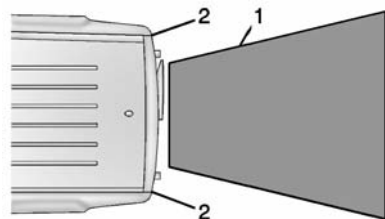
When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the centre stack display.

#### Warning

The RVC system does not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or any other object located outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Perceived distances may be different from actual distances. Do not reverse the vehicle using only the RVC screen, during longer, higher speed reversing manoeuvres, or where there could be cross traffic. Failure to use proper care before reversing may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check behind and around the vehicle before reversing.



1. View Displayed by the Camera



1. View Displayed by the Camera  
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

## 9-44 Driving and Operating

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may display on the RVC screen to show where the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

On vehicles with the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), a triangle with an arrow may also display on the RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from either direction. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side behind the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

URPA and Front Park Assist (if equipped), operate at speeds of less than 8 km/h (5 mph) and detect objects 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level, using the sensors on the bumpers. URPA detects objects up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind the vehicle, and Front Park Assist detects objects up to 1.2 m (4 ft) in front of the vehicle. These detection distances may be less during warmer or humid weather.

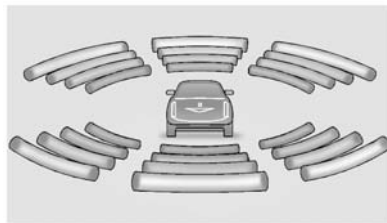
### Warning

The parking assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or reversing.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object location information for URPA, and

on some vehicles, for the Front Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up.

When an object is first detected in the rear, one beep will be heard from the rear, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse two times. When an object is very close (<0.6 m (2 ft) in the vehicle rear, or <0.3 m (1 ft) in the vehicle front), five beeps will sound from the front or rear, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. Beeps for Front Parking Assist are higher pitched than for Rear Parking Assist.

### Turning the Features On or Off



The **P** button near the shift lever is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist. The

indicator light next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

The Rear Vision Camera (RVC) can be turned on or off through the Settings menu on the infotainment system. The parking assist symbols, guidance lines, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) can also be turned off. To turn the RVC system, symbols, guidance lines, or RCTA on or off:

1. On the infotainment system, press the Settings screen button, or turn the MENU knob to highlight Settings and press MENU.
2. Select Rear Camera.
3. Press Rear Camera Display, Park Assist Symbols, Guidance Lines, or Rear Cross Traffic Alert and then select OFF or ON.

## Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle forward, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), and/or the Active Emergency Braking System can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

### Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

The FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a red flashing alert on the windshield, and beeps or pulses the Safety Alert Seat when approaching a vehicle directly ahead too quickly. FCA also provides a visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the

## 9-46 Driving and Operating

vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-34*.

### Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

FCA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See the “Auto Collision Preparation” portion

of “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

### Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. The vehicle-ahead indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected in front. Vehicles may not be detected on bends, highway exit ramps, or hills; or due to poor visibility. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

### Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

### Collision Alert



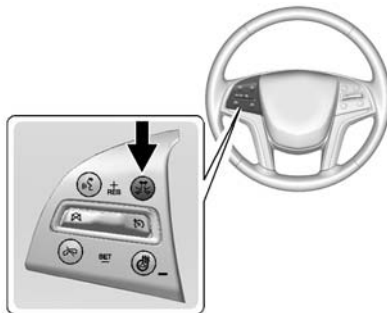
When the vehicle is started, this series of red lights will come on to indicate the system is operating. When your vehicle approaches another vehicle too rapidly, the red lights will flash on the windscreen. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged.

### Tailgating Alert

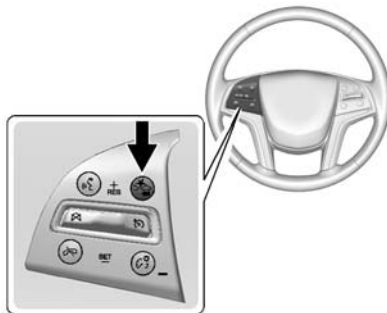


The vehicle-ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

### Selecting the Alert Timing



With Adaptive Cruise Control



Without Adaptive Cruise Control

Press the collision alert/following gap button on the steering wheel to set the FCA timing to far, medium, near, or on some vehicles, off. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Changing the FCA timing setting automatically changes the following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near) for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) feature.



### Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

### Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windscreen in front of the camera sensor and the front of the vehicle may correct the issue.

### Active Emergency Braking System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the Active Emergency Braking System, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) and the Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System. These systems can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle to help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes.

### Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

#### Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

### Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System

ACP may help reduce crash damage by applying the vehicle's brake system and has a detection range of approximately 60 m (197 ft). Braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected ahead in your path. This is shown by the FCA vehicle-ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-45.

#### Warning

ACP is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on ACP to brake the vehicle.

ACP may not:

- Respond to stopped vehicles, pedestrians, or animals.
- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Detect a stopped or slow-moving vehicle or other object ahead.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow. In these situations, ACP sensor performance is limited.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

**Brake Preparation**

When quickly approaching a vehicle ahead, Brake Preparation reduces brake response time by having the brake system prepared for driver braking to occur more rapidly.

**Automatic Braking**

In some imminent front-end crash situations, if the driver has not applied the brakes, Automatic Braking applies the brakes to help reduce crash damage. It may even help avoid some very low speed crashes.

Automatic Braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, Automatic Braking will engage the electric handbrake, Electric Parking Brake (EPB), to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release the EPB, press the EPB button. A firm press of the accelerator pedal will also release Automatic Braking and the EPB.

 **Warning**

Automatic Braking may automatically brake the vehicle in situations where it may be unnecessary. It could respond to  
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. This could be uncomfortable and startling. To override Automatic Braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Automatic Braking can be disabled or reduced through vehicle personalisation. See the “Auto Collision Preparation” portion of “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*.

 **Warning**

Using the Automatic Collision Preparation System while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system off when towing a trailer.

## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the Side Blind Zone Alert system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. The SBZA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the indicator is on.

### Warning

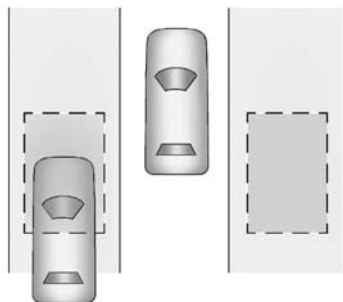
SBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the indicators.

### SBZA Detection Zones

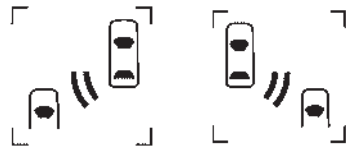


The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the

ground. This zone starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft).

### How the System Works

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the indicators.



**Left Side Mirror Display**      **Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is moving forward, the left-

or right-side mirror display will light up if a vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the indicator is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-38*. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

### **When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly**

SBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly or when towing a trailer. The SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. SBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side

of the vehicle. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care on page 10-78*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalisation menu.

### **Declaration of Conformity**

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

### **Lane Departure Warning (LDW)**

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide a warning if the vehicle is crossing a detected lane marker without using an indicator in the lane departure direction. LDW uses a camera sensor to detect the lane markings. It only operates at speeds of 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater.

When the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking, the LDW indicator will flash and either three beeps will be sounded from the left or right side, or three Safety Alert Seat pulses will occur on the left or right side of the seat, depending on the lane departure direction. LDW will not warn if the indicator is on in the departure direction, or if a sharp manoeuvre is made.

### **Warning**

The LDW system is an aid to help the vehicle stay in the driving lane. It does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under bad weather conditions or if the windscreen is dirty.
- Detect lane markings and will not detect road edges.

(Continued)


### **Warning (Continued)**

- Warn that the vehicle is crossing a lane marking if the system does not detect the lane marking.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marker. Even with LDW, always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen clean and do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

### **How the System Works**

The LDW camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LDW on and off, press  near the shift lever. The control indicator will light when LDW is on.



When the vehicle is started, the LDW indicator on the instrument cluster will come on briefly.

If LDW is on, the LDW indicator will appear green if the system detects a left or right lane marking while the vehicle is travelling at 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the indicator in the lane departure direction, this indicator will change to amber and flash. In addition, three beeps will be sounded from the left or right side, or the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times on either the left or right side of the seat, depending on the lane departure direction.

### When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

If the LDW symbol does not appear when the system is on and the vehicle is travelling at least 56 km/h (35 mph):

- The lane markings on the road may not be seen.
- The camera sensor may be blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.

- The windscreen may be damaged.
- The weather may be limiting visibility.

This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service.

Lane markings may not be detected on bends, motorway exit ramps, or hills; or due to poor visibility.

If the LDW camera system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windscreen in front of the camera sensor may correct the issue.

### Warning

LDW does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects the lane markings. LDW may not detect the lane markings if the camera sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a lane on winding

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair.

LDW warnings may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

### Fuel

Use the recommended fuel for proper vehicle maintenance.

### Recommended Fuel

Use regular unleaded petrol with a posted octane rating of 95 RON or higher. If the octane rating is less than 95 RON, an audible knocking noise may be heard. If this occurs, use a petrol rated at 95 RON or higher as soon as possible. If heavy knocking is heard when using petrol rated at 95 RON or higher, the engine needs service.

### Use of Seasonal Fuels

Use summer and winter fuels in the appropriate season. Driving or starting could be affected if the incorrect fuel is used. Drive the vehicle with the engine running until the fuel is a half tank or less, then refuel with the current seasonal fuel.

### Prohibited Fuels

Petrols containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated petrols are available in some cities. If these petrols comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in flex fuel vehicles.

 **Caution**

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.

Some petrols that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called

methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use petrols with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, see your dealer for service.

### Fuel Additives

Petrol should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. Some petrol does not contain sufficient quantities of additive to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. To make up for this lack of detergency, add Fuel System Treatment PLUS, part number 88861013 to the fuel tank at every engine oil change or every 15 000 km, whichever occurs first.

## Filling the Tank

### Warning

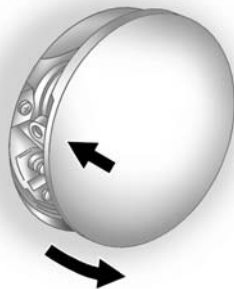
Fuel vapours and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.


- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refuelling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not reenter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Fuel can spray out if the fuel cap is opened too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop then unscrew the cap all the way



The fuel cap is behind a hinged fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle. To open the fuel filler flap, push and release the rearward centre edge of the flap. If equipped, the fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press  on the RKE transmitter to unlock.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly anticlockwise.

While refuelling, hang the tethered fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

When reinstalling the cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once, otherwise the malfunction indicator lamp could turn on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* on page 5-15.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* on page 10-78.



When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-15*.

### **Warning**

If a fire starts while you are refuelling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

### **Caution**

If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap might not fit properly,

(Continued)

### **Caution (Continued)**

might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-15*.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

### **Warning**

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapours that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

- Remove the container from the vehicle, boot, or pickup bed before filling.
- Place the container on the ground.
- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.
- Fill the container no more than 95% full to allow for expansion.
- Do not smoke, light matches, or use lighters while pumping fuel.
- Avoid using mobile phones or other electronic devices.

## Trailer Towing

### General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer. Read the entire section before towing a trailer.

For towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-74*. For towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing on page 10-76*.

### Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

#### Driving with a Trailer

When towing a trailer:

- Become familiar with the state and local laws that apply specifically to trailer towing.

- Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 mi), to prevent damage to the engine, axle or other parts.
- Then, during the first 800 km (500 mi) trailer towing, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle.
- The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.
- Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control when towing.
- The Automatic Collision Preparation System should be set to "Off" when towing. See *Active Emergency Braking System on page 9-48*.
- Turn off Park Assist when towing.

#### Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the tailgate, boot/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate, boot/hatch, or rear-most window open.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Also adjust the Climate Control system to a setting that brings in only outside air. See "Climate Control Systems" in the Index.

For more information about Carbon Monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-20*.

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. The combination you are driving is longer and not as responsive as the vehicle itself. Get acquainted with the handling and braking of the rig before setting out for the open road.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tyres, and mirrors. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes work.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure and the lamps and any trailer brakes still work.

### **Towing with a Stability Control System**

When towing, the sound of the stability control system might be heard. The system is reacting to the vehicle movement caused by the

trailer, which mainly occurs during cornering. This is normal when towing heavier trailers.

### **Following Distance**

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

### **Overtaking**

More overtaking distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

### **Reversing**

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always reverse slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

## **Making Turns**



Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Use the indicators well in advance and avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres.

### **Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer**

The indicator indicators on the instrument cluster flash whenever signalling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lights

also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes or stopping.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument cluster flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

### Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before starting down a long or steep downhill gradient. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

The vehicle can tow in D (Drive). Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, engine coolant boils at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill

grades, the vehicle could show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

### Parking on Hills

 **Warning**

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

### Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
  - Start the engine.
  - Shift into a gear.
  - Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal.

3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

### Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See the *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. Inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

### Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

### Trailer Towing

Before pulling a trailer, there are three important considerations that have to do with weight:

- The weight of the trailer
- The weight of the trailer tongue
- The total weight on the vehicle's tyres

### Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See "Weight of the Trailer Tongue" later in this section.

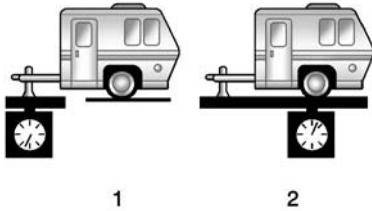
Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional

equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer for trailering information or advice.

### Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (1) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the nose weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the nose weight must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8* for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



If a weight-carrying hitch or a weight-distributing hitch is being used, the trailer tongue (1) should weigh 10-15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (2).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailerage may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR

(Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce the trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

It is important that the vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings - GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure it is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the vehicle and trailer.

### Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tyres

Be sure the vehicle's tyres are inflated to the upper limit for cold tyres. These numbers can be found on the Certification label or see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight distributing hitch, make sure not to go over the rear axle limit before applying the weight distribution spring bars.

## Towing Equipment

### Hitches

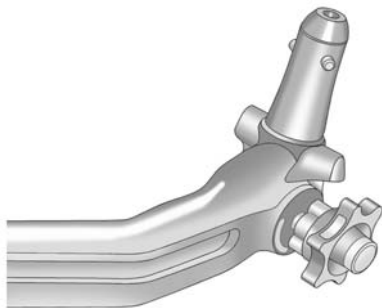
It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed.

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If there are, then be sure to seal the holes later when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust on page 9-20 Engine Exhaust*.

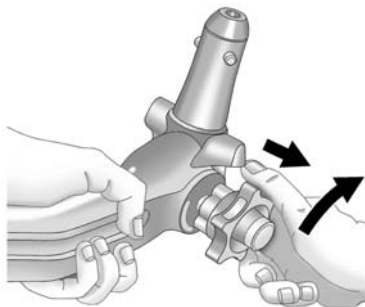
## 9-62 Driving and Operating

### Installing the Hitch

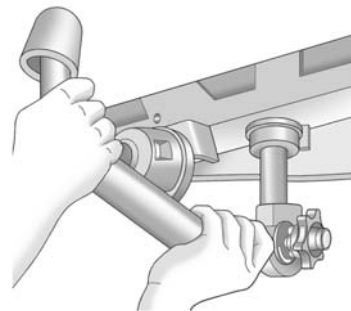
1. Remove the hitch cover and store in a safe place.



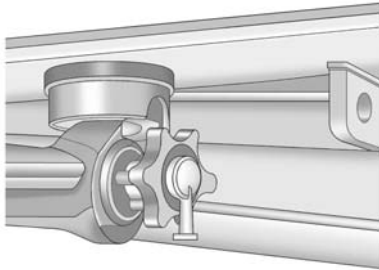
2. Make sure the hitch is ready to be installed.
  - The red marking on knob points towards the green mark on the hitch.
  - There is a gap of 6 mm (0.24 in) between the knob and the hitch.
  - The key is in the lock.



3. If the hitch is not ready to be installed, the tension must be set by pulling the knob out and turning it clockwise as far as it will go.



4. Insert the hitch into the housing and push up firmly until you hear the knob snap into place against the hitch.

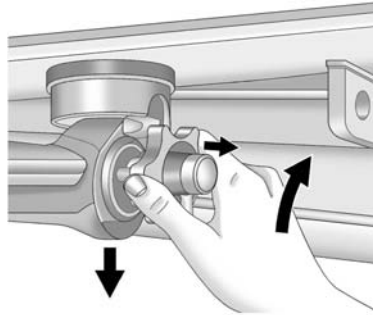


5. Remove the key and install the protective cover.

Check that the hitch is correctly installed:

- Red marking on knob points towards white marking on hitch.
- There is no gap between the knob and the hitch.
- The hitch is seated firmly in the housing.
- The hitch must be locked and the key removed.

### Removing the Hitch



1. Pull the knob out and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
2. Pull the hitch downwards out of the coupling housing and store it in a safe place.
3. Insert the plug in the housing.

### Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it

becomes separated from the hitch. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

### Trailer Brakes

A loaded trailer that weighs more than 450 kg (1,000 lbs) needs to have its own brake system that is adequate for the weight of the trailer. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted and maintained properly.

Because the vehicle has anti-lock brakes, do not tap into the vehicle's brake system. If you do, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

### Trailer Wiring Harness

See your dealer/retailer or towing professional for information on preparing the vehicle for trailer towing.



### Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a TSC feature as part of the StabiliTrak system. If TSC detects that the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.



When TSC is applying the brakes, the TCS/StabiliTrak indicator light flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, StabiliTrak will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if StabiliTrak is turned off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-29.

### Conversions and Add-Ons

#### Add-On Electrical Equipment

|  |
|--|
|  <b>Caution</b> |
|--|

|  |
|--|
| Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment. |
|--|

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 3-27 and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 3-27.

# Vehicle Care

## General Information

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| General Information .....           | 10-2 |
| Accessories and Modifications ..... | 10-2 |

## Vehicle Checks

|                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| Doing Your Own Service Work .....  | 10-3  |
| Bonnet .....                       | 10-4  |
| Engine Compartment Overview .....  | 10-5  |
| Engine Cover .....                 | 10-6  |
| Engine Oil .....                   | 10-6  |
| Engine Oil Life System .....       | 10-9  |
| Automatic Transmission Fluid ..... | 10-9  |
| Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....    | 10-9  |
| Cooling System .....               | 10-11 |
| Engine Coolant .....               | 10-12 |
| Engine Overheating .....           | 10-16 |
| Power Steering Fluid .....         | 10-17 |
| Washer Fluid .....                 | 10-18 |
| Brakes .....                       | 10-19 |
| Brake Fluid .....                  | 10-20 |
| Battery .....                      | 10-21 |
| All-Wheel Drive .....              | 10-22 |

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Starter Switch Check .....                                     | 10-22 |
| Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check ..... | 10-23 |
| Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check .....                  | 10-23 |
| Wiper Blade Replacement .....                                  | 10-23 |

## Headlamp Aiming

|                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| Headlamp Aiming ..... | 10-25 |
|-----------------------|-------|

## Bulb Replacement

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Bulb Replacement .....                        | 10-25 |
| Halogen Bulbs .....                           | 10-25 |
| High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting ..... | 10-26 |
| Headlamps .....                               | 10-26 |
| Indicator Lamps .....                         | 10-29 |
| Back-Up Lamps .....                           | 10-30 |
| Number Plate Lamp .....                       | 10-30 |
| Replacement Bulbs .....                       | 10-31 |

## Electrical System

|                                  |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| Electrical System Overload ..... | 10-32 |
| Fuses and Circuit Breakers ..... | 10-32 |

|                                     |       |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Engine Compartment Fuse Block ..... | 10-33 |
| Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....   | 10-35 |
| Rear Compartment Fuse Block .....   | 10-37 |

## Wheels and Tyres

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Tyres .....                                  | 10-40 |
| All-Season Tyres .....                       | 10-41 |
| Winter Tyres .....                           | 10-41 |
| Summer Tyres .....                           | 10-41 |
| Tyre Pressure .....                          | 10-42 |
| Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation ..... | 10-43 |
| Tyre Pressure Monitor System .....           | 10-43 |
| Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation .....        | 10-45 |
| Tyre Inspection .....                        | 10-48 |
| Tyre Rotation .....                          | 10-48 |
| When It Is Time for New Tyres .....          | 10-49 |
| Buying New Tyres .....                       | 10-50 |
| Different Size Tyres and Wheels .....        | 10-52 |
| Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance .....       | 10-52 |
| Wheel Replacement .....                      | 10-53 |

## 10-2 Vehicle Care

---

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Tyre Chains .....                                    | 10-53 |
| If a Tyre Goes Flat .....                            | 10-54 |
| Tyre Sealant and<br>Compressor Kit .....             | 10-56 |
| Storing the Tyre Sealant and<br>Compressor Kit ..... | 10-63 |
| Tyre Changing .....                                  | 10-63 |
| Compact Spare Tyre .....                             | 10-69 |
| <b>Jump Starting</b>                                 |       |
| Jump Starting .....                                  | 10-70 |
| <b>Towing the Vehicle</b>                            |       |
| Towing the Vehicle .....                             | 10-74 |
| Recreational Vehicle<br>Towing .....                 | 10-76 |
| <b>Appearance Care</b>                               |       |
| Exterior Care .....                                  | 10-78 |
| Interior Care .....                                  | 10-83 |
| Floor Mats .....                                     | 10-86 |

### General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

### Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like anti-lock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorise the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 3-27.

## Vehicle Checks

### Doing Your Own Service Work

 **Warning**

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 3-27.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed.

 **Caution**

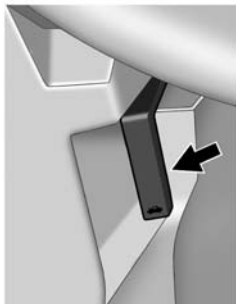
Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

## 10-4 Vehicle Care

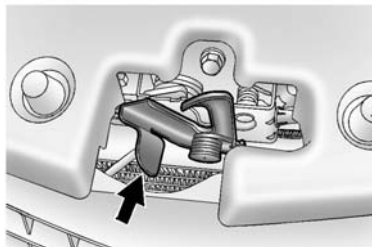
---

### Bonnet

To open the bonnet:



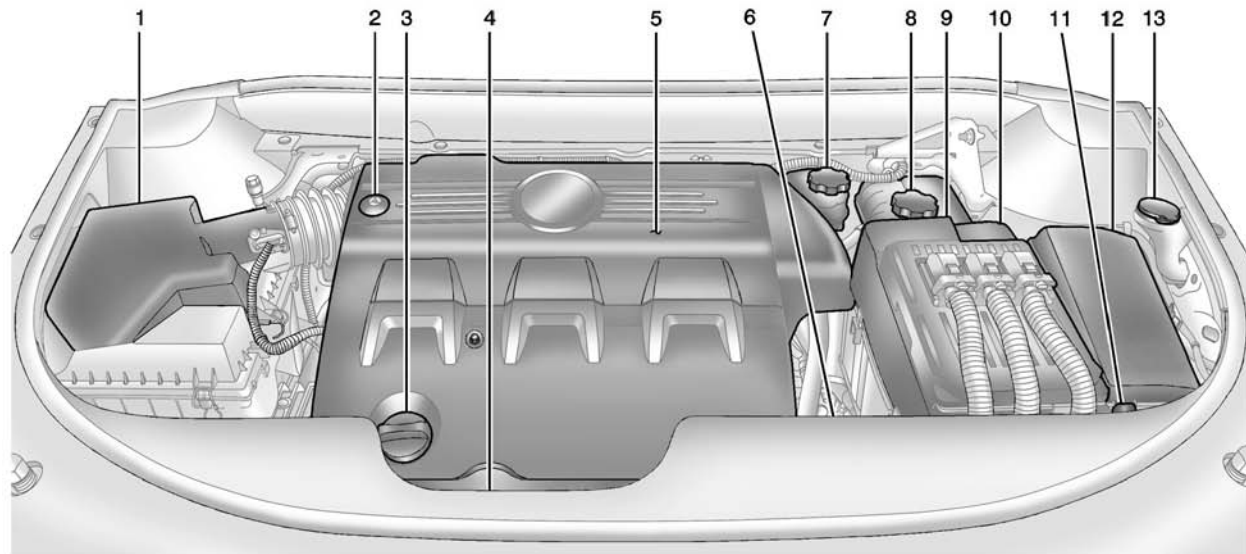
1. Pull the release handle with the above symbol on it. It is located below the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.



2. Move the secondary bonnet release lever up to release the striker. The lever is located near the middle of the bonnet.
3. Lift the hood.

Before closing the bonnet, be sure all the filler caps are on properly.

## Engine Compartment Overview

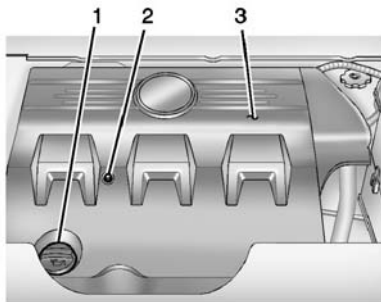


## 10-6 Vehicle Care

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-9.*
2. *Power Steering Reservoir and Cap (Under Engine Cover). See [Power Steering Fluid on page 10-17.](#)*
3. *Engine Oil Fill Cap. See [Engine Oil on page 10-6.](#)*
4. *Engine Oil Dipstick (Out of View). See [Engine Oil on page 10-6.](#)*
5. *Engine Cover on page 10-6.*
6. *Transmission Fluid Cap and Dipstick (Out of View). See [Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 10-9.](#)*
7. *Brake Fluid Reservoir. See [Brakes on page 10-19.](#)*
8. *Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See [Engine Coolant on page 10-12.](#)*
9. *Battery (Out of View). See [Battery on page 10-21.](#)*

10. *Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See [Jump Starting on page 10-70.](#)*
11. *Remote Negative (-) Terminal (Out of View). See [Jump Starting on page 10-70.](#)*
12. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-33.*
13. *Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See [Washer Fluid on page 10-18.](#)*

### Engine Cover



1. Oil Fill Cap

2. Engine Cover Bolt
3. Engine Cover

To remove:

1. Remove the oil fill cap (1).
2. Remove the engine cover bolt (2).
3. Raise the engine cover (3) to release from the retainers.
4. Lift and remove the engine cover.
5. Reverse Steps 1–4 to reinstall engine cover.

### Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.

- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-9*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

### Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil sump. Checking the oil level too soon

after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.

#### Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

### When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

#### Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when done.



### Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

#### Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos2™ approved certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements for the vehicle should have the dexos2 approved certification mark. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos2 specification.



#### Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Check with your dealer or service provider on whether the oil is approved to the dexos2 specification.

#### Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

**Cold Temperature Operation:** If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below  $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct

specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section for more information.

#### Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

#### What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags

containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

## Engine Oil Life System

### When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-31*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

See "Oil Life" under *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-25* for information on the engine oil life monitor.

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

## Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter.

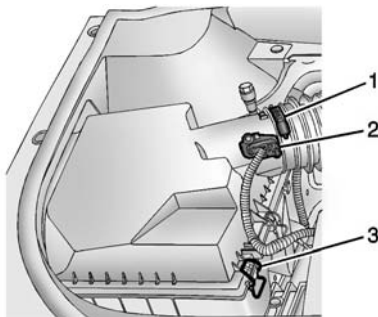
## 10-10 Vehicle Care

### When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

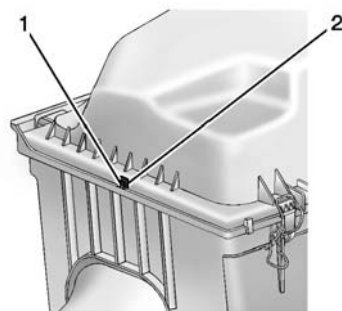
Inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals. See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 11-1. If driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

### How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains covered with dirt, a new filter is required. Never use compressed air to clean the filter.



1. Air Duct Clamp
2. Electrical Connector
3. Retaining Clips



1. Cover Cut Outs
2. Air Filter Tabs

To inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* on page 10-4.
2. Locate the air filter housing on the front of the passenger side of the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5.
3. Disconnect the outlet duct by loosening the air duct clamp (1).

4. Disconnect the electrical connector (2). First, remove the connector lock clip located at the bottom of the connector, then press on the top and bottom of the connector to remove.
5. Lift the 3 retaining clips (3) on the air filter housing.
6. Tilt and lift the cover slightly upwards and slide the cover away from outside edge of the vehicle. Remove the air filter.
7. To install the air filter, place filter inside box where the pleats fit in between the tabs located inside the lower box. Ensure that the cover cut outs (1) on both sides match the air filter tabs (2) on both sides.
8. Replace air cleaner cover by inserting the 4 tabs into the 4 slots. Lower cover to meet bottom of box. Place the 3 retaining clips (3) on retention features and clip closed.

9. Reconnect outlet duct to cover and tighten the air duct clamp (1).
10. Reconnect the electrical connector (2). Install connector lock clip to bottom of connector.

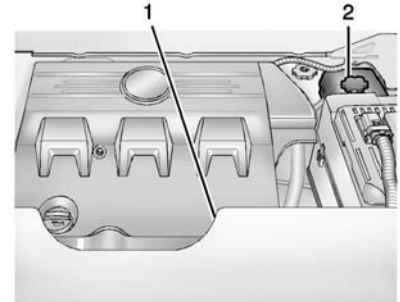
**Warning**

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

**Caution**

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

**Cooling System**



1. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

### Warning

An electric engine cooling fan under the bonnet can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underbonnet electric fan.

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

The coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX lines. If it is not, the vehicle may have a leak at the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

### Warning

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak, with the engine on, check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, the vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

### Caution

Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> engine coolant. This coolant needs to be checked and replaced at appropriate intervals. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

### What to Use

 **Warning**

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to -37°C (-34°F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminium parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

 **Caution**

If improper coolant mixture, inhibitors, or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the engine could overheat and be

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

damaged. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack engine cooling parts. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only the proper mixture of engine coolant for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the refuse, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorised service centre, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

### Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

## 10-14 Vehicle Care

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the indicated mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

See *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5*.

### How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

#### Caution

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

If no problem is found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the indicated level mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it.

#### Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool.

#### Warning

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

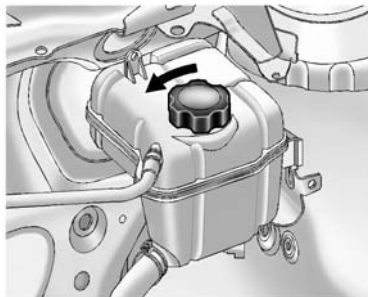
could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

**⚠ Caution**

In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

**⚠ Warning**

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.



1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise about one-quarter of a turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.

2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.

3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture to the indicated level mark.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the indicated level mark.

5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.
6. Verify coolant level after the engine is shut off and the coolant is cold. If necessary, repeat coolant fill procedure Steps 1–6.

If the coolant still is not at the proper level when the system cools down again, see your dealer.



### **Caution**

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

## Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an indicator to warn of engine overheating.

There is an engine coolant temperature warning light on the vehicle instrument cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* on page 5-12.

If the decision is made not to lift the bonnet when this warning appears, get help right away.

If the decision is made to lift the bonnet, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fans are running. If the engine is overheating, both fans

should be running. If they are not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

### **Caution**

Running the engine without coolant may cause damage or a fire. Vehicle damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

### **Warning**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the bonnet. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the bonnet.

If you keep driving when the engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

## If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.

- Tows a trailer.

If the overheat warning displays with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

## Power Steering Fluid



See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5 for reservoir location.

### When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless a leak is suspected in the system or unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

### How to Check Power Steering Fluid

To check the power steering fluid:

1. Turn the engine off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Remove the engine cover, if required. See *Engine Cover* on page 10-6.
3. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
4. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
5. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
6. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be within the HOT mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level within the mark.

### What to Use

#### Caution

Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle and the damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the correct fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*. Always use the proper fluid.

### Washer Fluid

#### What to Use

When windscreen washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall

below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

#### Adding Washer Fluid

The WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message appears on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid Messages on page 5-38*.



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid up to the fill mark. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for reservoir location.

#### Caution

- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windscreen washer. It can damage the windscreen washer system and paint.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

## Brakes

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

### Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

### Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tyres are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

### Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

### Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

## Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes - for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

### Brake Fluid



The brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake/clutch hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake/clutch hydraulic system fixed,

since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top up the brake/clutch fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

#### Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

### Checking Brake Fluid

The brake/clutch fluid can be checked without taking off the cap by looking at the brake/clutch fluid reservoir.

The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have the brake/clutch hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system, make sure the level is above MIN but not over the MAX mark.

When the brake/clutch fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-18*.

#### What to Add

Use only new GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

Always clean the brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

 **Warning**

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake/clutch hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake/clutch fluid.

 **Caution**

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake/clutch hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.

- If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.

**Battery**

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for battery location.

 **Warning**

Batteries should not be disposed of with regular refuse. Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.



 **Warning**

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a torch.

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

 **Warning**

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

**Vehicle Storage**

**Infrequent Usage:** Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

**Extended Storage:** Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

**All-Wheel Drive**

**Transfer Case**

Under normal driving conditions, transfer case fluid does not require changing or checking unless there

is a fluid leak or unusual noise. If required, have the transfer case serviced by your dealer.

**Starter Switch Check**

 **Warning**

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Apply both the parking brake and the regular brake.

Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral).

If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

### Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Apply the parking brake. Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.

3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the gear lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

## Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

### Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, apply the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

## Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking.

It is a good idea to clean or replace the wiper blade assembly on a regular basis or when worn. For



## 10-24 Vehicle Care

proper windscreen wiper blade length and type, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* on page 11-6.

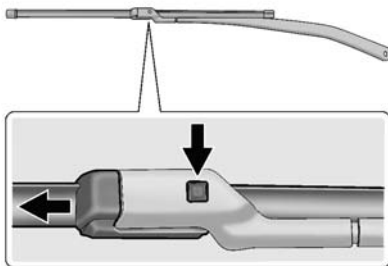
### **Caution**

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windscreen when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windscreen. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windscreen.

### **Front Wiper Blade Replacement**

To replace the wiper blade assembly:

1. Pull the windscreen wiper assembly away from the windscreen.



2. Press the button in the middle of the wiper arm connector, and pull the wiper blade away from the arm connector.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Reverse steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

### **Rear Wiper Blade Replacement**

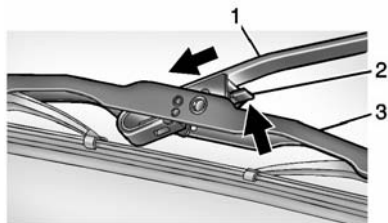
The rear wiper blade and wiper arm have a cover for protection. The cover must be removed before the wiper blade can be replaced.

To remove the cover:



1. Slide a plastic tool under the cover and push upward to unsnap.
2. Slide the cover toward the wiper blade tip to unhook it from the blade assembly.
3. Remove the cover.
4. After wiper blade replacement, ensure that the cover hook slides into the slot in the blade assembly.
5. Snap the cover down to secure.

To remove the wiper blade:



1. Lift the wiper arm away from the window.
2. Push the release lever (2) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (1) out of the blade assembly (3).
3. Push the new blade assembly securely on the wiper arm until the release lever clicks into place.
4. Replace the wiper cover.

## Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp alignment has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp alignment may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-31*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

## Halogen Bulbs

### Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

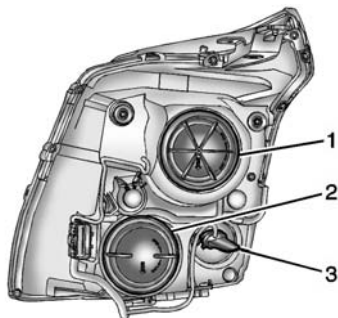
## High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

### Warning

The high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

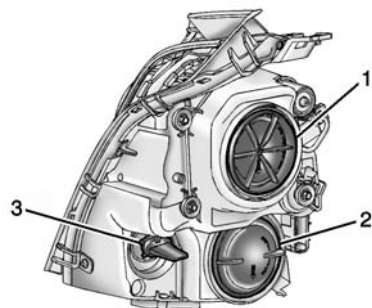
After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

## Headlamps



### Base Headlamp Assembly (Rear View Passenger Side)

1. Dipped Beam Headlamp/ Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)
2. Main Beam Headlamp
3. Indicator Lamp



### Uplevel Headlamp Assembly (Rear View Driver Side)

1. Main/Dipped Beam Headlamp (To be replaced at dealer only)
2. Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)
3. Indicator Lamp

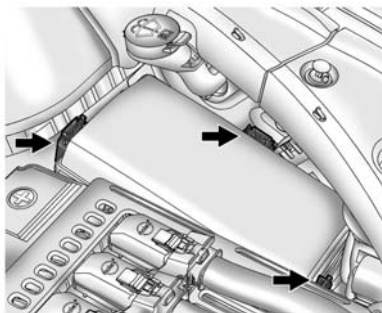
### Driver Side

The removal of the under bonnet electrical centre cover is required for the replacement of one of these bulbs:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* on page 10-4.

**Warning**

Liquids from environment or spillage and/or tools placed on top of or used in the underbonnet electrical centre while the cover is removed can pose a risk of electrical shock/burn to anyone in the vicinity. These conditions can also cause damage to electrical components on the vehicle. Keep liquids and tools away from the underbonnet electrical centre when the cover is removed.



2. Unlatch three clips and lift up the underbonnet electrical centre cover to remove.

**Passenger Side**

The removal of the air filter/cleaner assembly and base is required for the replacement of one of these bulbs:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* on page 10-4.
2. Remove the air cleaner/filter cover. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* on page 10-9.

3. Lift the air cleaner/filter base to disengage from the three pins.

**Dipped-Beam Headlamps/  
Daytime Running Lamps  
(DRL), Main-Beam  
Headlamps (Base)**



1. From the back side of the headlamp assembly, remove the top cap to replace the dipped beam headlamp/DRL bulb.



2. From the back side of the headlamp assembly, remove the bottom cap to replace the main beam headlamp bulb.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly.
5. Replace the bulb in the bulb socket.
6. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly.
7. Connect the electrical connector.

8. Install the cap with the down arrow pointing down in the back of the headlamp assembly.
9. For the driver side, reinstall the under bonnet electrical centre cover by latching three clips.
10. For the passenger side, reinstall the air filter/cleaner assembly base by pushing to seat. Verify the base is seated securely, then install the engine air filter/cleaner assembly.

### Main/Dipped Beam Headlamps (Uplevel)

The main/dipped beam headlamps on the uplevel are High Intensity Discharge (HID) and should be replaced at the dealer.

### Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) (Uplevel)



1. From the back side of the headlamp assembly, remove the bottom cap to replace the DRL bulb.
2. Disconnect electrical connector.
3. Remove the DRL bulb socket from the headlamp assembly.
4. Replace the bulb in the bulb socket.
5. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly.

6. Connect the electrical connector.
7. Install the cap with the down arrow pointing down in the back of the headlamp assembly.
8. For driver side, reinstall the underbonnet electrical centre cover by latching three clips.
9. For passenger side, reinstall the air filter/cleaner assembly base by pushing to seat. Verify the base is seated securely, then install the engine air filter/cleaner assembly.

### Front Indicator Lamp (Base and Uplevel)

To replace the front indicator lamp:

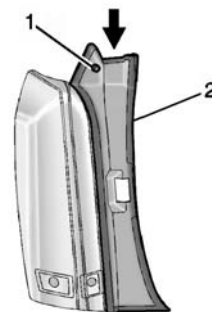
1. Remove the indicator lamp bulb socket from the headlamp assembly.
2. Remove the indicator lamp bulb from the socket.
3. Replace the bulb in the bulb socket.

4. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly.
5. For the driver side, reinstall the under bonnet electrical centre cover by latching three clips.
6. For the passenger side, reinstall the air filter/cleaner assembly base by pushing to seat. Verify the base is seated securely, then install the engine air filter/cleaner assembly.

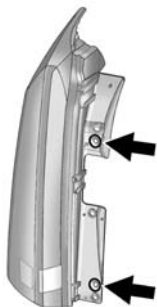
### Indicator Lamps

To replace one of these bulbs:

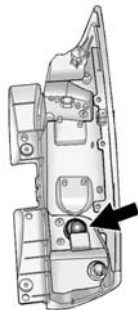
1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate* on page 2-11.



2. Remove the push pin (1) on the tail lamp cover (2).
3. Remove the tail lamp cover from the lamp assembly by pulling rearward from the top to unfasten the snap tabs.



4. Remove the two screws from the taillamp assembly.
5. Pull the taillamp assembly straight back to remove.



6. Turn the indicator lamp bulb socket anticlockwise to remove it from the tail lamp assembly.
7. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.
8. Press a new bulb into the socket, insert it into the tail lamp assembly, and turn the bulb socket clockwise until it clicks.

9. Reinstall the taillamp assembly and tighten the screws.
10. Reinstall the taillamp cover by snapping it into place.
11. Push the push pin to secure the taillamp cover.

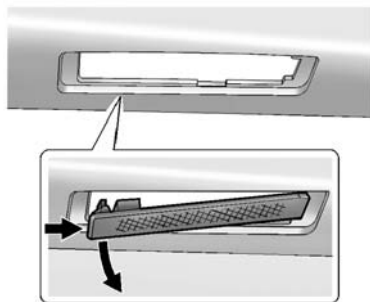
### Back-Up Lamps

This vehicle has LED reversing and rear fog lamps. For replacement of these lamps, contact your dealer.

### Number Plate Lamp

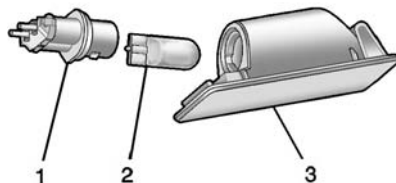
To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate* on page 2-11.



**Passenger Side Shown, Driver Side Similar**

2. Push the left end of the lamp assembly toward the right.
3. Turn the lamp assembly down to remove it from the tailgate.



4. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
5. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket.
6. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install into the lamp assembly.
7. Turn the lamp assembly into the tailgate, engaging the clip side first.

8. Push on the lamp side opposite the clip until the lamp assembly snaps into place.

### Replacement Bulbs

| Exterior Lamp                      | Bulb Number |
|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Daytime Running Lamp (If Equipped) | W21/5W ULL  |
| Headlamp Main Beam (Base)          | 9005        |
| Headlamp Dipped Beam (Base)        | H11 LL      |
| Number Plate Lamp                  | W5WLL       |
| Indicator Front                    | WY21W       |
| Tail/Indicator Rear                | WY21W       |

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.



## Electrical System

### Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

### Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

### Windscreen Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windscreen wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windscreen before using the windscreen wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

To check a fuse, look at the silver-coloured band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

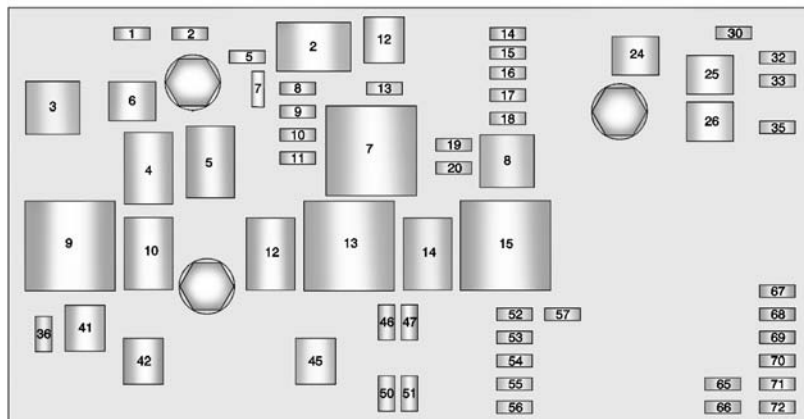
To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-33, Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-35, and Rear Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-37.*

## Engine Compartment Fuse Block

To remove the fuse block cover, press the clips on the cover and lift it straight up.

**⚠ Caution**

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



**Engine Compartment Fuse Block**

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

| J-Case Fuses | Usage       |
|--------------|-------------|
| 6            | Wiper       |
| 12           | Vacuum Pump |

| J-Case Fuses | Usage                      |
|--------------|----------------------------|
| 24           | Antilock Brake System Pump |
| 25           | Rear Electrical Centre 1   |

## 10-34 Vehicle Care

| J-Case Fuses | Usage                    |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 26           | Rear Electrical Centre 2 |
| 41           | Cooling Fan 2            |
| 42           | Starter                  |
| 45           | Cooling Fan 1            |

| MiniFuses | Usage                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| 1         | Engine Control Module Battery       |
| 2         | Transmission Control Module Battery |
| 5         | Engine Control Module Run Crank     |
| 7         | Post-Catalytic Converter O2 Sensor  |
| 8         | Pre-Catalytic Converter O2 Sensor   |

| MiniFuses | Usage   |
|-----------|---|
| 9         | Engine Control Module Powertrain                        |
| 10        | Fuel Injectors - Even                                   |
| 11        | Fuel Injectors - Odd                                    |
| 13        | Washer  |
| 14        | Heated Steering Wheel                                   |
| 15        | Heads Up Display  |
| 16        | Instrument Cluster/ Malfunction Indicator Lamp/Ignition |
| 17        | Air Quality Sensor                                      |
| 18        | Headlamp Washer   |
| 19        | Transmission Control Module Run Crank                   |
| 20        | Rear Electrical Centre Run Crank                        |
| 30        | Switch Back Light                                       |

| MiniFuses | Usage  |
|-----------|--|
| 32        | Battery Sense (Regulated Voltage Control)                    |
| 33        | Adaptive Forward Lighting/Adaptive Headlamp Levelling Module |
| 35        | Electronic Brake Control Module                              |
| 36        | Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch                           |
| 46        | Dipped Beam Headlamp – Right                                 |
| 47        | Dipped Beam Headlamp – Left                                  |
| 50        | Front Fog Lamps  |
| 51        | Horn   |
| 52        | Fuel System Control Module                                   |
| 53        | Headlamp Level   |
| 54        | Sensing Diagnostic Module Ignition                           |

| MiniFuses | Usage                         |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| 55        | Main Beam Headlamp – Right    |
| 56        | Main Beam Headlamp – Left     |
| 57        | Ignition Steering Column Lock |
| 65        | Trailer Right Brake lamp      |
| 66        | Trailer Left Brake lamp       |
| 67        | Spare                         |
| 68        | Spare                         |
| 69        | Spare                         |
| 70        | Spare                         |
| 71        | Spare                         |
| 72        | Spare                         |

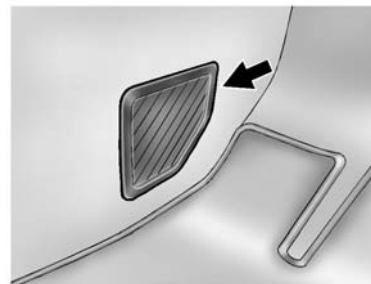
| Mini Relays | Usage         |
|-------------|---------------|
| 7           | Powertrain    |
| 9           | Cooling Fan 2 |

| Mini Relays | Usage         |
|-------------|---------------|
| 13          | Cooling Fan 1 |
| 15          | Run/Crank     |

| Micro Relays | Usage           |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 2            | Vacuum Pump     |
| 4            | Wiper Control   |
| 5            | Wiper Speed     |
| 10           | Starter         |
| 12           | Cool Fan 3      |
| 14           | Dipped Beam/HID |

| U Micro Relays | Usage                              |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 3              | Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch |
| 8              | Headlamp Washer                    |

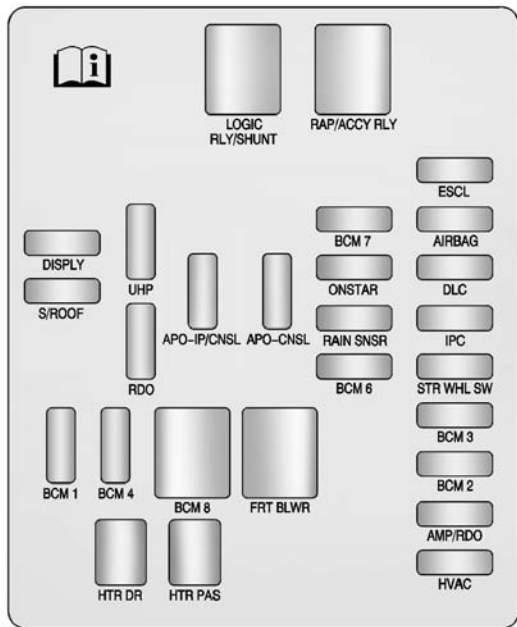
## Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse block is located in the centre console between the driver and passenger seats. To access the fuses, open the fuse panel door from the passenger side by pulling it out.

To reinstall the door, push the door back into its original location.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.



Instrument Panel Fuse Block

| MiniFuses     | Usage   |
|---------------|---|
| DISPLY        | Display   |
| S/ROOF        | Sunroof   |
| UHP           | Universal Handsfree Phone (If Equipped)           |
| RDO           | Radio   |
| APO – IP/CNSL | Auxiliary Power Outlet – Instrument Panel/Console |
| APO - CNSL    | Auxiliary Power Outlet - Floor Console            |
| BCM 1         | Body Control Module 3                             |
| BCM 4         | Body Control Module 4                             |
| BCM 7         | Body Control Module 7                             |
| ONSTAR        | OnStar® System (If Equipped)                      |
| RAIN SNSR     | Rain Sensor                                       |

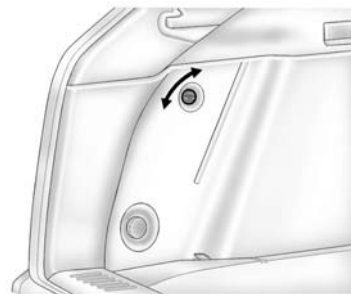
| MiniFuses  | Usage                                  |
|------------|--|
| BCM 6      | Body Control Module 6                  |
| ESCL       | Electronic Steering Column Lock        |
| AIRBAG     | Sensing and Diagnostic Module          |
| DLC        | Data Link Connector                    |
| IPC        | Instrument Cluster                     |
| STR WHL SW | Steering Wheel Switch                  |
| BCM 3      | Body Control Module 1                  |
| BCM 2      | Body Control Module 2                  |
| AMP/RDO    | Amplifier/Radio                        |
| HVAC       | Heating Ventilation & Air Conditioning |

| J-Case Fuses | Usage                 |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| BCM 8        | Body Control Module 8 |
| FRT BLWR     | Front Blower          |

| Relays           | Usage                                     |
|------------------|---|
| LOGIC RLY/ SHUNT | Logistics Relay/ Shunt                    |
| RAP/ ACCY RLY    | Retained Accessory Power/ Accessory Relay |

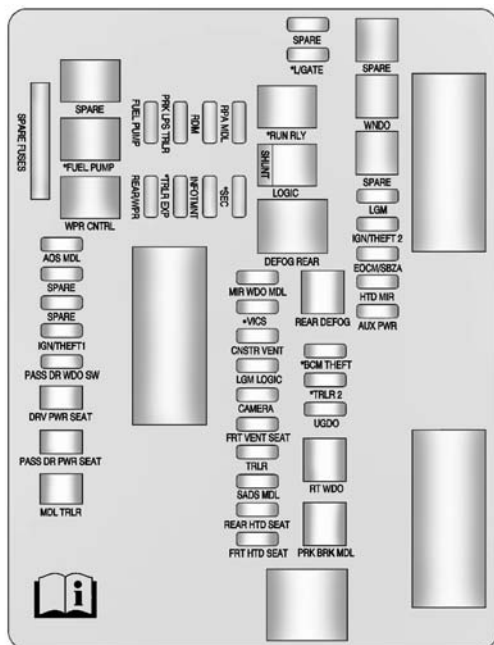
| Breakers | Usage                 |
|----------|-----------------------|
| HTR DR   | Heated Driver Seat    |
| HTR PAS  | Heated Passenger Seat |

## Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is in the cargo area, on the driver side of the vehicle behind the lower trim panel. To open, turn the latch with a flat bladed tool and pull the trim panel from the edges to fold it down.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.



Rear Compartment Fuse Block

| Fuses         | Usage   |
|---------------|---|
| AOS MDL       | Automatic Occupant Sensing Module                         |
| AUX PWR       | Auxiliary Power Outlet                                    |
| * BCM THEFT   | Body Control Module Theft                                 |
| CAMERA        | Rear Vision Camera  |
| CNSTR VENT    | Canister Vent   |
| DRV PWR SEAT  | Driver Power Seat   |
| EOCM/ SBZA    | External Object Calculating Module/ Side Blind Zone Alert |
| FRT HTD SEAT  | Front Heated Seats  |
| FRT VENT SEAT | Front Ventilated Seats                                    |
| FUEL PUMP     | Fuel Pump   |
| HTD MIR       | Heated Mirror   |

| Fuses               | Usage                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| IGN/<br>THEFT 1     | Ignition/Theft 1                |
| IGN/<br>THEFT 2     | Ignition/Theft 2                |
| INFOTMNT            | Infotainment                    |
| * T/GATE            | Tailgate                        |
| LGM                 | Tailgate Module                 |
| LGM<br>LOGIC        | Tailgate Module<br>Logic        |
| MDL TRLR            | Trailer Module                  |
| MIR<br>WDO MDL      | Mirror Window<br>Module         |
| PRK<br>BRK MDL      | Park Brake Module               |
| PASS DR<br>WDO SW   | Passenger Door<br>Window Switch |
| PASS DR<br>PWR SEAT | Passenger/Driver<br>Power Seats |
| PRK<br>LPS TRLR     | Trailer Park Lamps              |
| RDM                 | Rear Drive Module               |

| Fuses            | Usage                                   |
|------------------|---|
| REAR<br>DEFOG    | Rear Defog                              |
| REAR<br>HTD SEAT | Rear Heated Seats                       |
| REAR/WPR         | Rear Wiper                              |
| RT WDO           | Right Window                            |
| RPA MDL          | Rear Parking Assist<br>Module           |
| SADS MDL         | Semi Active<br>Damping System<br>Module |
| * SEC            | Security                                |
| SHUNT            | Shunt                                   |
| SPARE            | Not Used                                |
| SPARE<br>FUSES   | Spare Fuses                             |
| *<br>TRLR EXP    | Trailer Export                          |
| TRLR             | Trailer Module                          |
| * TRLR 2         | Trailer 2                               |

| Fuses | Usage  |
|-------|--|
| UGDO  | Universal Garage<br>Door Opener                          |
| VICS  | Vehicle Information<br>Communications<br>System (Export) |
| WDO   | Power Window   |

| Relays            | Usage                      |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| DEMIST<br>REAR    | Rear Window<br>Demister    |
| *<br>FUEL<br>PUMP | Fuel Pump                  |
| LOGIC             | Logistic Relay<br>(Export) |
| * RUN RLY         | Run Relay                  |
| SPARE             | Not Used                   |
| WPR<br>CONTRL     | Wiper Control              |

\*Denotes uplevel content.



## Wheels and Tyres

### Tyres

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tyres made by a leading tyre manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tyre warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tyre manufacturer.

#### Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tyres are dangerous.
- Overloading the tyres can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8*.

- Underinflated tyres pose the same danger as overloaded tyres. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tyres frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold.
- Overinflated tyres are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact - such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tyres at the recommended pressure.

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

- Worn or old tyres can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tyres that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tyres can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorised tyre service centre should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tyres.
- Do not spin the tyres in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tyres to explode.

See *Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation on page 10-43* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

## All-Season Tyres

This vehicle may come with all-season tyres. These tyres are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tyres designed to GM's specific tyre performance criteria have a TPC specification code moulded onto the sidewall. Original equipment all-season tyres can be identified by the last two characters of this TPC code, which will be "MS."

Consider installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tyres provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of

traction or performance as winter tyres on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tyres on page 10-41*.

## Winter Tyres

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tyres. Winter tyres are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tyre availability and proper tyre selection. Also, see *Buying New Tyres on page 10-50*.

With winter tyres, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tyres, be alert for changes in the vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tyres:

- Use tyres of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.

- Use only radial ply tyres of the same size, load range and speed rating as the original equipment tyres.

Winter tyres with the same speed rating as the original equipment tyres may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tyres. If winter tyres with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tyre's maximum speed capability.

## Summer Tyres

This vehicle may come with high performance summer tyres. These tyres have a special tread and compound that are optimised for maximum dry and wet road performance. This special tread and compound will decrease performance in cold climates, and on ice and snow. We recommend installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving in cold temperatures or on snow or ice covered roads is expected. See *Winter Tyres on page 10-41*.

### Tyre Pressure

Tyres need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

#### Caution

Neither tyre underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tyres, or tyres that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tyre overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Overinflated tyres, or tyres that have too much air, can result in:

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The Tyre and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tyres and the correct cold tyre inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8*.

How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

### When to Check

Check the tyres once a month or more. Do not forget the compact spare, if the vehicle has one. The cold compact spare tyre pressure should be at 420 kPa (60 psi). See *Compact Spare Tyre on page 10-69*.

### How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tyre pressure. Proper tyre inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tyre. Check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure

matches the recommended pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve to release air.

Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to prevent leaks and keep out dirt and moisture.

## Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation

 **Warning**

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts an additional strain on tyres.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build-up and can cause sudden tyre failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tyres require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tyres are rated for high-speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tyre inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P235/65R18, P235/55R20, or 235/55R20 size tyres require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold inflation pressure to the maximum inflation pressure shown on the tyre sidewall, or 260 kPa

(38 psi), whichever is lower. Return the tyres to the recommended cold tyre inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8* and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-42*.

The maximum load and inflation pressure is molded on the tyre sidewall, in small letters, near the rim flange. It will read something like this: Maximum load 690 kg (1521 lbs) 300 kPa (44 psi) Max. Press.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor System

 **Caution**

Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

## 10-44 Vehicle Care

---

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tyres and transmit tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for

approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45* for additional information.

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tyre pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tyre and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tyre and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tyres and transmits the tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the

tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-8.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tyre and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-8, for an example of the Tyre and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tyre Pressure* on page 10-42.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance. See *Tyre Inspection* on page 10-48, *Tyre Rotation* on page 10-48 and *Tyres* on page 10-40.

### Caution

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tyre sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tyre sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tyre sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed Tyre Inflator Kits use a GM approved liquid tyre sealant. Using non-approved tyre sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* on page 10-56 for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

### TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tyre warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tyres has been replaced with the spare tyre. The spare tyre does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tyre is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tyres. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tyres* on page 10-50.

- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

### TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tyre/wheel position after rotating the vehicle's tyres or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tyre with a road tyre containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tyre/wheel positions,

using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tyre, passenger side front tyre, passenger side rear tyre, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool.

You have two minutes to match the first tyre/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tyre/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Place the vehicle power mode in ON/RUN/START. See *Ignition Positions* on page 9-14.
3. Make sure the Tyre Pressure info display option is turned on. The info displays on the DIC can be turned on and off through the Settings menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.

4. Use the five-way DIC control on the right side of the steering wheel to scroll to the Tyre Pressure screen under the DIC info page. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-25.
5. Press and hold the SEL button in the centre of the five-way DIC control.
 

The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and the TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
6. Start with the driver side front tyre.
7. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tyre and wheel position.



8. Proceed to the passenger side front tyre, and repeat Step 7.
9. Proceed to the passenger side rear tyre, and repeat Step 7.
10. Proceed to the driver side rear tyre, and repeat Step 7. The horn sounds twice to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tyre, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
11. Shut the ignition off.
12. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tyre and Loading Information label.

### **Tyre Inspection**

We recommend that the tyres, including the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tyre if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tyre can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tyre's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump, bulge, or split.

- The tyre has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

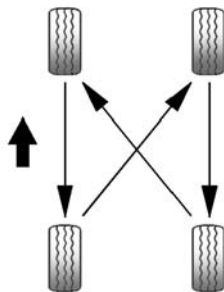
### **Tyre Rotation**

Tyres should be rotated at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

Tyres are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tyres. The first rotation is the most important.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tyres as soon as possible, check for proper tyre inflation pressure, and check for damaged tyres or wheels. If the unusual wear

continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tyres on page 10-49* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-53*.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating the tyres.

Do not include the compact spare tyre in the tyre rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tyres to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label after

the tyres have been rotated. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-42* and *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-8*.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor System. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-45*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

#### Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In

(Continued)

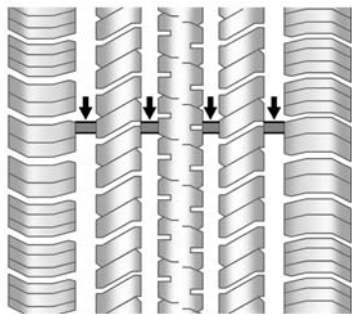
#### Warning (Continued)

an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the centre of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tyre rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

#### When It Is Time for New Tyres

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tyres.



Tread wear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tyres. Tread wear indicators appear when the tyres have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tyre Inspection* on page 10-48 and *Tyre Rotation* on page 10-48.

The rubber in tyres ages over time. This also applies to the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast ageing takes place. GM recommends that tyres, including the spare if

equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. The tyre manufacturer date is the last four digits of the DOT Tyre Identification Number (TIN) which is moulded into one side of the tyre sidewall. The first two digits represent the week (01–52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

### Vehicle Storage

Tyres age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow ageing. This area should be free of grease, petrol, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tyres that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for

at least a month, remove the tyres or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tyres.

### Buying New Tyres

GM has developed and matched specific tyres for the vehicle. The original equipment tyres installed were designed to meet General Motors Tyre Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tyres are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tyres with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tyre pressure monitoring

performance. GM's TPC Spec number is moulded onto the tyre's sidewall near the tyre size. If the tyres have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow.

GM recommends replacing worn tyres in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tyres will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tyres are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tyres should wear out at about the same time. See *Tyre Rotation* on page 10-48 for information on proper tyre rotation. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tyres, place the new tyres on the rear axle.

Winter tyres with the same speed rating as the original equipment tyres may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tyres. Never exceed the winter tyre's maximum speed capability when using winter tyres with a lower speed rating.

 **Warning**

Tyres could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tyre could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorised tyre service centre should mount or dismount the tyres.

 **Warning**

Mixing tyres of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tyres on all wheels.

 **Warning**

Using bias-ply tyres on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tyre and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tyres with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tyres must be replaced with a tyre that does not have a TPC Spec number,

make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tyres.

Vehicles that have a tyre pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tyres are installed. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System* on page 10-43.

The Tyre and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tyres on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-8 for the label location and more information about the Tyre and Loading Information label.

### Different Size Tyres and Wheels

If wheels or tyres are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tyres, vehicle

performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

#### **Warning**

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tyres not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tyre systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tyres* on page 10-50 and *Accessories and Modifications* on page 10-2.

### Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

The tyres and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tyre life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tyre balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tyre wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tyres and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminium wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

### Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tyres can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

### Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tyre or tyre chain clearance to the body and chassis.

## Used Replacement Wheels

### Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

## Tyre Chains

Use tyre chains only where legal and only when necessary.

Before using tyre chains, check with the tyre manufacturer to make sure tyre chains are compatible with the tyres on the vehicle. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Only use tyre chains on 235/65R18 size tyres. Do not use tyre chains on 235/55R20 size tyres.

 **Caution**

Do not install traction devices on the front tyres.

Install them on the rear tyres only, as tightly as possible, with the ends securely fastened.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides, including chain lock.

 **Caution**

To help avoid damage to the vehicle, drive slowly, do not spin the wheels, and readjust or remove the device if it contacts the vehicle.

Drive slowly and follow the cable manufacturer's instructions. If the cables are contacting the vehicle,

stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

Do not use tyre chains on the spare tyre.

### If a Tyre Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tyre to blow out while driving, especially if the tyres are maintained properly. See *Tyres on page 10-40*. If air goes out of a tyre, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tyre fails, the flat tyre creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the

accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

 **Warning**

Driving on a flat tyre will cause permanent damage to the tyre. Re-inflating a tyre after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tyre that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tyre service centre repair or replace the flat tyre as soon as possible.

**⚠ Warning**

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tyre. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tyre.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* on page 6-7.

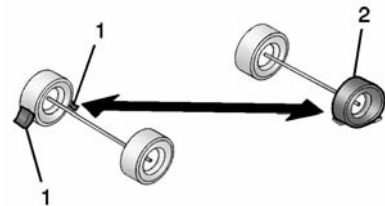
**⚠ Warning**

Changing a tyre can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tyre. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual gearbox in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
5. Place wheel blocks on both sides of the tyre at the opposite corner of the tyre being changed.

This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tyre or a tyre sealant and compressor kit. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tyre safely, follow the instructions below. Then see *Tyre Changing* on page 10-63. To use the tyre sealant and compressor kit, see *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* on page 10-56.

When the vehicle has a flat tyre (2), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (1).



1. Wheel Block
2. Flat Tyre



The following information explains how to repair or change a tyre.

### Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

#### Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-20.

#### Warning

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

#### Warning

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

If this vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tyre, tyre changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tyre.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an under inflated tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)

2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button
5. Tyre Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

### Tyre Sealant

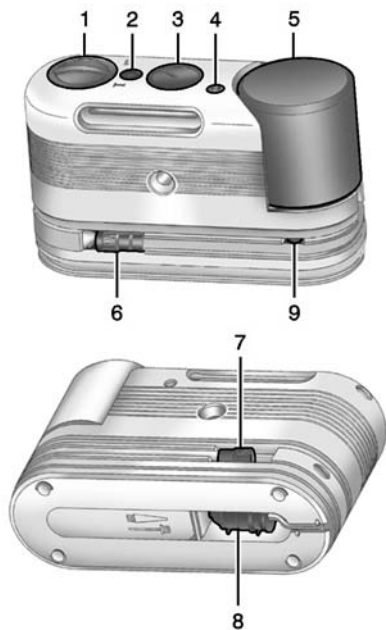
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See "Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister" following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See "Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister" following.

### Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tyre

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.



When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a

heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tyre faster.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* on page 6-7.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat* on page 10-54 for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* on page 10-63.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.

4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (6) onto the tyre valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* on page 5-6.  
  
If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.  
  
If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.  
  
Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) anticlockwise to the Sealant + Air position.

9. Press the on/off (2) button to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

The pressure gauge (3) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.

10. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* on page 10-42.

The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

 **Caution**

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre, therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Turn the sealant/air hose (6) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
14. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
15. Replace the sealant/air hose (6), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.



16. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location. Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.
17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tyre.

19. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured).”

If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

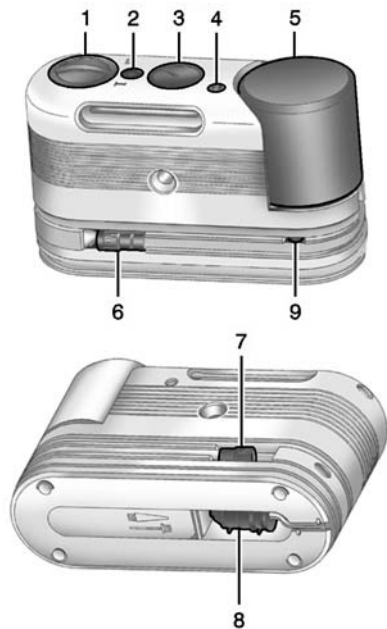
If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre and vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (6) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local regulations and practices.

22. Replace with a new canister assembly available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing the tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorised dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

### **Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)**

To use the air compressor to inflate a tyre with air only and not sealant:



If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* on page 6-7.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat* on page 10-54 for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* on page 10-63.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.  
Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tyre valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (7) onto the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.

6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* on page 5-6.

If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off (2) button to turn the compressor on.  
The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.

## 10-62 Vehicle Care

- Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* on page 10-42.

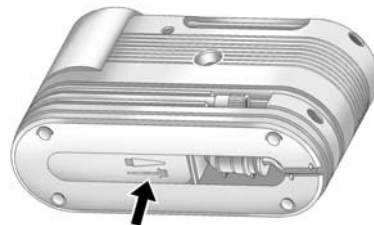
The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

If you inflate the tyre higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (7).

- Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

- Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
- Disconnect the air only hose (7) from the tyre valve stem, by turning it anticlockwise, and replace the tyre valve stem cap.
- Replace the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8) and cord back in its original location.
- Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



The tyre sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

### Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

To remove the sealant canister:

- Unwrap the sealant/air hose to access the canister release button.
- Press the canister release button (9).

3. Pull up and remove the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Push the new canister into place.
6. Rewrap the sealant/air hose.

## Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

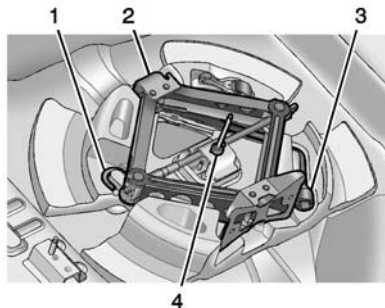


This vehicle may have a tyre sealant and compressor kit in place of a jack or spare tyre. It is located

in a foam container in the rear compartment storage area. If the vehicle has a cargo cover, see *Cargo Management System on page 4-5* for instructions on how to access the tyre sealant and compressor kit.

## Tyre Changing

### Removing the Spare Tyre and Tools

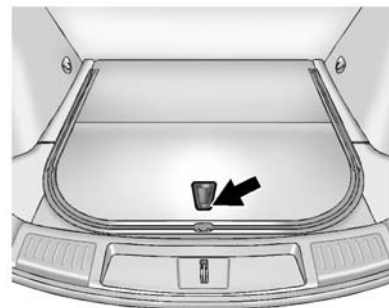


1. Extension
2. Jack

3. Wheel Wrench
4. Wing Nut

To access the spare tyre and tools:

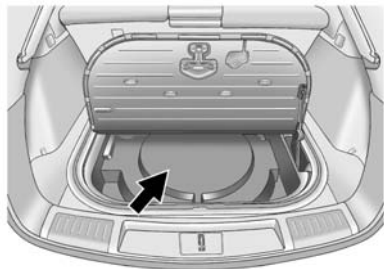
1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 2-11*.



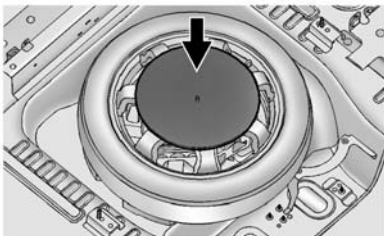
2. Press on the bottom of the handle assembly to unlatch it and lift up on the handle.

The prop rod locks into place when open.

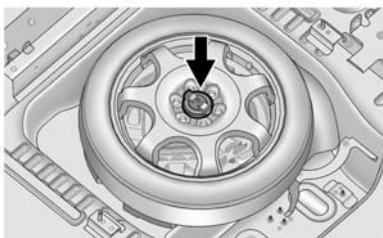




3. Remove the spare tyre cover.



4. Remove the rubber cover.

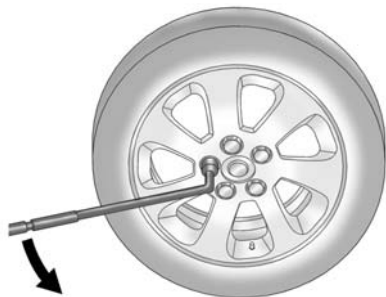


5. Remove the nut retaining the spare tyre.
6. Remove the spare tyre and place it next to the tyre being changed.
7. Remove the wing nut.
8. Remove the extension, jack, and wheel wrench and place them near the tyre being changed.

### Removing the Flat Tyre and Installing the Spare Tyre

Take off the wheel cover or centre cap, if the vehicle has one, to reach the wheel bolts.

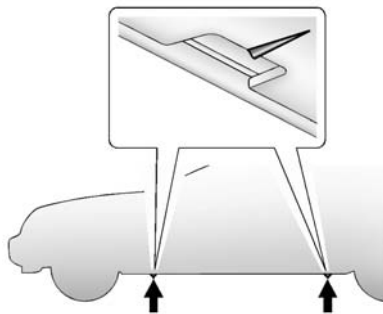
1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tyre Goes Flat* on page 10-54 for more information.
2. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen and remove the wheel nut caps.  
Do not try to remove plastic caps from the cover or centre cap.
3. Pull the cover or centre cap away from the wheel. Store the wheel cover in the cargo area until you have the flat tyre repaired or replaced.



4. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts, but do not remove them yet.
5. Place the jack near the flat tyre.

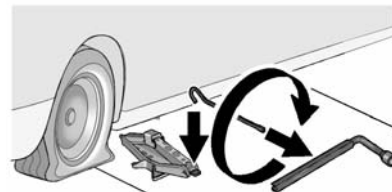
**⚠ Caution**

Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.



6. Position the jack lift head at the jack location nearest the flat tyre.

The jacking location is indicated by a V-shaped notch in the plastic moulding. The jack must not be used in any other position.



7. Insert the hooked end of the extension handle through the jack and the flat end through the wheel wrench.

**⚠ Warning**

Getting under a vehicle when it is lifted on a jack is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

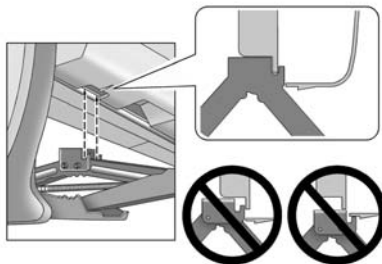
### Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

### Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tyre. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tyre.

- Turn the extension with the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the jack lift head until the jack just fits under the vehicle.



- Raise the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until the slots in the jack head fit into the metal flange located behind the triangle on the plastic moulding.

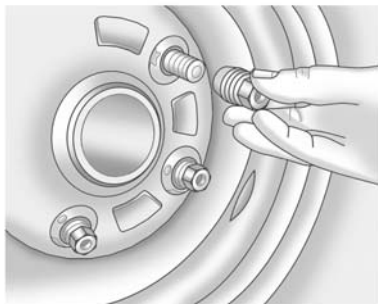
### Caution

Using a jack to raise the vehicle without positioning it correctly could damage your vehicle. When raising your vehicle on a jack, be sure to position it correctly under the frame and avoid contact with the plastic moulding.

### Caution

If the doors are locked with the security system armed, the alarm will activate when the vehicle is raised by the jack.

10. Put the compact spare tyre near you.



Remove all of the wheel nuts.

11. Remove the flat tyre.

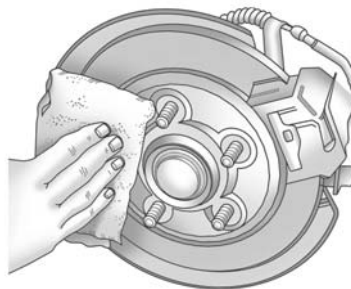
**Warning**

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.



12. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.

13. Place the compact spare tyre on the wheel-mounting surface.

**Warning**

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

14. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
15. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle anticlockwise.

**Warning**

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification

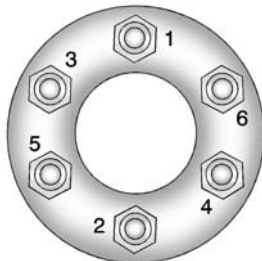
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel nuts. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

**⚠ Caution**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and disc damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications* for the wheel nut torque specification.



16. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence, as shown.
17. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
18. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly with the wheel wrench.

When reinstalling the wheel cover or centre cap on the full-size tyre, tighten all five plastic caps hand snug with the aid of the wheel wrench and tighten them with the wheel wrench an additional one-quarter of a turn.

**⚠ Caution**

Wheel covers will not fit on the vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.

**Storing a Flat or Spare Tyre and Tools****⚠ Warning**

Storing a jack, a tyre, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

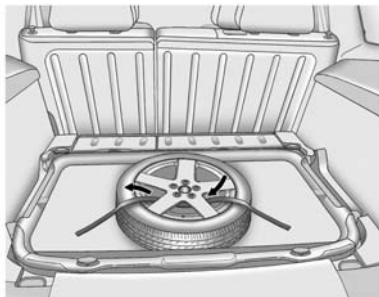
To store the flat or spare tyre and tools:

1. Open the tailgate. See *Tailgate on page 2-11* for more information.

2. Put back all tools as they were stored in the rear storage compartment and put the compartment cover back on. For more information, see “Storing the Compact Spare Tyre and Tools” next in this section.
3. Install the cargo cover. For more information, see *Cargo Management System* on page 4-5.
4. Place the tyre, lying flat, in the rear storage compartment.



5. Attach the strap to the cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.



6. Route the strap through the wheel, as shown.
7. Attach the strap to the other cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.
8. Tighten the strap.
9. Replace the rubber cover.

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tyre with a full-size tyre as soon as you can.

## Compact Spare Tyre

### Warning

Driving with more than one compact spare tyre at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tyre at a time.

If this vehicle has a compact spare tyre, it was fully inflated when new; however, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. It should be 420 kPa (60 psi).

Stop as soon as possible and check that the spare tyre is correctly inflated after being installed on the vehicle. The compact spare tyre is

designed for temporary use only. The vehicle will perform differently with the spare tyre installed and it is recommended that the vehicle speed be limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). To conserve the tread of the spare tyre, have the standard tyre repaired or replaced as soon as convenient and return the spare tyre to the storage area.

When using a compact spare tyre, the ABS and Traction Control systems may engage until the spare tyre is recognised by the vehicle, especially on slippery roads. Adjust driving to reduce possible wheel slip.

### **Caution**

When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails  
(Continued)

### **Caution (Continued)**

which can damage the tyre, wheel, and other parts of the vehicle.

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

Do not mix the compact spare tyre or wheel with other wheels or tyres. They will not fit. Keep the spare tyre and its wheel together.

### **Caution**

Tyre chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and the chains. Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare.

## Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery on page 10-21*.

If the vehicle battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jump leads to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

### **Warning**

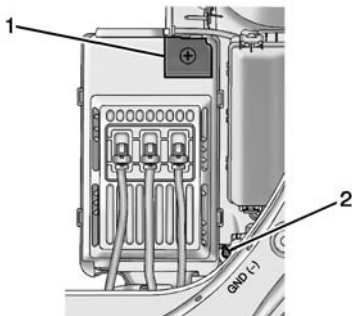
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

**⚠ Caution**

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Remote Positive (+) Terminal
2. Remote Negative (-) Terminal

Your vehicle is equipped with a remote positive (+) terminal (1) and a remote negative (-) terminal (2). The remote positive (+) terminal is located in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle, above the rear of the battery. The remote negative (-) terminal is a stud located in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle, on the front tie bar. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5.

To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, lift open the access panel on the battery cover indicated by the (+) sign.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

**⚠ Caution**

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jump leads can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, apply the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the transmission in P (Park) before applying the parking brake.



 **Caution**

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or the accessory power outlet. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks, helping save both batteries and the radio.

4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (-) terminal locations on that vehicle.

Open the bonnet on your vehicle and find the remote positive (+) and remote negative (-) jump starting terminals.

 **Warning**

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underbonnet electric fan.

 **Warning**

Using an open flame near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt  
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a torch if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

 **Warning**

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jump leads do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could also be damaged.

Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (-) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Do not connect positive (+) to negative (-) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts.

Do not connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
8. Now connect the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (-) terminal if the vehicle has one.

Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (-) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy,

unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (-) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

9. Connect the other end of the negative (-) cable away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.  
Your vehicle has a remote (-) terminal for this purpose.
10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.
11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

**⚠ Caution**

If the jump leads are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jump leads in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

**Jump Lead Removal**

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jump leads.

**Towing the Vehicle**

**⚠ Caution**

Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not lash or hook to the chassis components — including the front and rear subframes, suspension control arms, and links — during towing and recovery of a disabled vehicle, or when securing the vehicle. Use the proper nylon strap harnesses around the tyres to secure the vehicle.

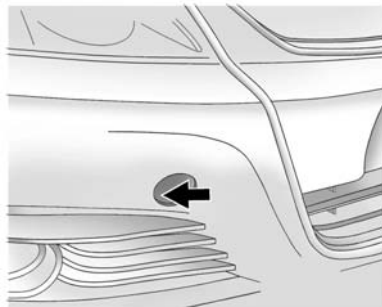
Have the vehicle towed on a flatbed car carrier. A wheel lift tow truck could damage the vehicle.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

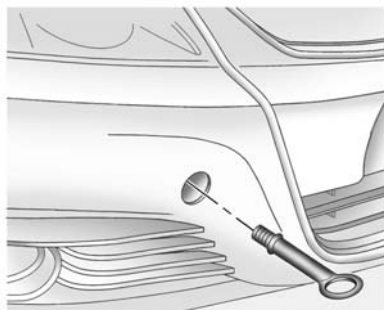
**⚠ Caution**

Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.

**Front Tow Eye**



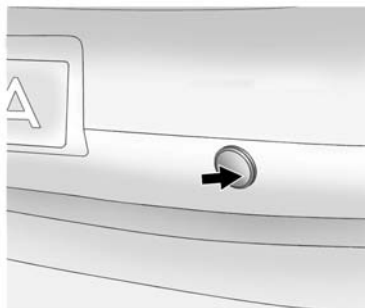
Carefully open the cover by using the small notch that conceals the front tow eye socket.



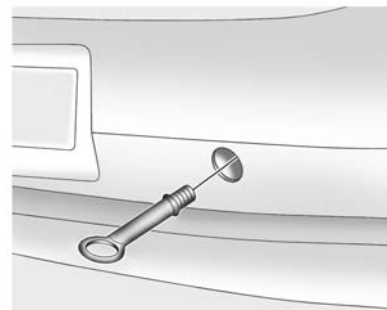
Install the tow eye into the socket by turning it clockwise until it stops in a horizontal position.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

### Rear Tow Eye



Carefully open the cover by using the small notch that conceals the rear tow eye socket.



Install the tow eye into the socket by turning it clockwise until it stops in a horizontal position.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see "Recreational Vehicle Towing" in this section.

### Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle - such as behind a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

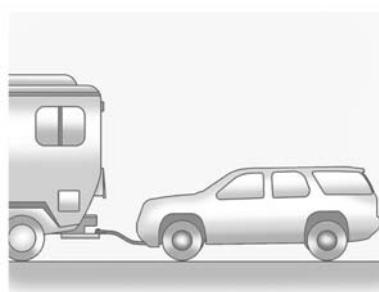
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.

- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

#### Dinghy Towing

The vehicle may be dinghy towed from the front. The vehicle can also be towed on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground.

For vehicles being dinghy towed, the vehicle should be run at the beginning of each day and at each RV fuel stop for about five minutes. This will ensure proper lubrication of transmission components.



To tow the vehicle from the front with all four wheels on the ground:

1. Position the vehicle that will be towed and secure it to the towing vehicle.
2. Open the drivers door.
3. With the vehicle OFF, press the brake pedal and press the START/STOP switch to start the engine (the green indicator light on the switch will illuminate).
4. Put the vehicle in N (Neutral).

5. Press the START/STOP switch again. The engine will stop, the DIC will display Shift to Park and the amber indicator light on the switch illuminates. See *Transmission Messages on page 5-37*.
6. Remove the following fuses: ESCL, BCM 1, BCM 2 and BCM 3. The START/STOP switch indicator lights will be off. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-35*.
7. Close the drivers door.

 **Caution**

If the vehicle is towed without performing each of the steps listed under "Dinghy Towing," the automatic transmission could be damaged. Be sure to follow all steps of the dinghy towing procedure prior to and after towing the vehicle.

 **Caution**

If 105 km/h (65 mph) is exceeded while towing the vehicle, it could be damaged. Never exceed 105 km/h (65 mph) while towing the vehicle.

Once the destination has been reached:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Reinstall the fuses. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-35*.
3. Shift the transmission to P (Park).
4. Place the ignition position to LOCK/OFF.
5. Disconnect the vehicle from the tow vehicle.
6. Start the engine and let it idle for more than three minutes before driving the vehicle.

 **Caution**

Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Be sure that the transmission fluid is at the proper level before towing with all four wheels on the ground.

 **Caution**

Do not tow a vehicle with the front drive wheels on the ground if one of the front tyres is a compact spare tyre. Towing with two different tyre sizes on the front of the vehicle can cause severe damage to the transmission.

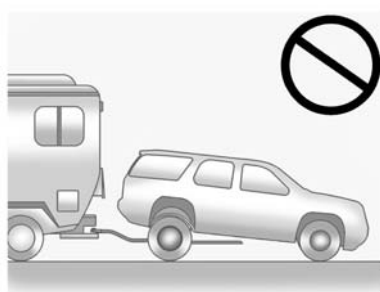
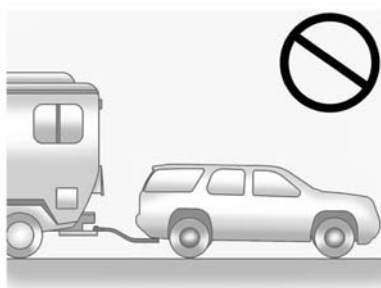
**Dolly Towing**

The vehicle should not be towed with two wheels on the ground. To properly tow the vehicle, it should

## 10-78 Vehicle Care

be placed on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground or dinghy towed from the front.

### Towing the Vehicle From the Rear



#### Caution

Towing the vehicle from the rear could damage it. Also, repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never have the vehicle towed from the rear.

## Appearance Care

### Exterior Care

#### Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

#### Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

#### Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning


(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

 **Caution**

Avoid using high-pressure washers closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

The  symbol is on any underbonnet compartment electrical centre that should not be power washed. This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

**Finish Care**

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.



 **Caution**

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a base coat/clear coat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a base coat/clear coat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

**Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Mouldings** **Caution**

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal mouldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal mouldings on the vehicle are aluminium. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the moulding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use a cleaning solution approved for aluminium. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the mouldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use chrome cleaners.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the moulding finish.

**Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses, Emblems, Decals and Stripes**

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses and emblems. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating.

Use only lukewarm water, a soft cloth, and mild car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Do not clean or wipe them while they are dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.

- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

 **Caution**

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

 **Caution**

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

### Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen when washing the vehicle.

### Windscreen and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windscreen with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windscreen washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windscreen thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Insects, road grime, sap, and a build-up of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

### Weatherstrips

Apply Dielectric silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

### Tyres

Use a stiff brush with tyre cleaner to clean the tyres.

 **Caution**

Using petroleum-based tyre dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tyres. When applying a tyre dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

### Wheels and Trim - Aluminium or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

#### Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

#### Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminium or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminium or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tyre cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect the front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. If equipped, inspect the hydraulic power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks,

cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.

### Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, bonnet hinges, tailgate hinges, and the fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

### Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, Spring and Autumn, use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

### Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion

material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

### **Finish Damage**

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

### **Chemical Paint Spotting**

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolourations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See "Finish Care" previously in this section.

### **Interior Care**

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soiling. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer colour to home furnishings can also permanently transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners directly on any switches or controls. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to

remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.

- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.8 L (1 gal) of water. A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

### Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

### Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

### Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

### Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft lint-free cloth dampened with water.

- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

### Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soil, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colourfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.

3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

### Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

 **Caution**

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the warranty.

### Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

 **Caution**

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

 **Caution**

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Cargo Cover and Convenience Net**

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

**Care of Safety Belts**

Keep belts clean and dry.

 **Warning**

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

**Floor Mats**

 **Warning**

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

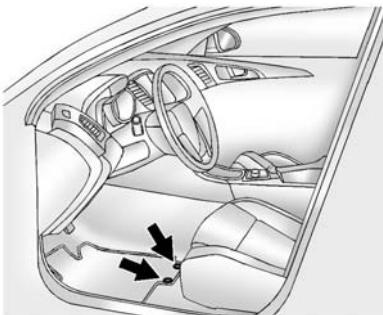
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that certified floor mats be purchased. Non-certified floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

### Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two button-type retainers. The passenger side floor mat is held in place by one button-type retainer.



1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snapping into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured and verify that it does not interfere with the pedals.





## Service and Maintenance

### General Information

General Information ..... 11-1

### Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance ..... 11-1

### Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 11-5

Maintenance Replacement Parts ..... 11-6

### Maintenance Records

Maintenance Records ..... 11-7

## General Information

It is essential that your vehicle receives the maintenance outlined on the following pages to retain the safety, reliability and performance originally built into your vehicle.

When your odometer reaches the mileage indicated on the following pages, or the corresponding time interval has been reached, take your vehicle, preferably to an authorised dealer and/or repairer, who will provide the proper parts and service.

Once maintenance has been performed, have the authorised dealer and/or repairer fill out and stamp the appropriate box in this booklet to serve as your maintenance record which may be needed for warranty repairs. It will also show future owners how well your vehicle has been maintained.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system might not indicate the need for vehicle service for more than a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed.

## 11-2 Service and Maintenance

---

### Inspection Every 15 000 km or 1 Year

- Change engine oil and filter. Reset oil life system.
- Engine coolant level check.
- Engine cooling system inspection. Visual inspection of hoses, pipes, fittings, and clamps and replacement, if needed.
- Windscreen washer fluid level check.
- Windscreen washer fluid level check.
- Windscreen wiper blade inspection for wear, cracking, or contamination and windscreen and wiper blade cleaning, if contaminated. Worn or damaged wiper blade replacement.
- Tyre inflation pressures check.
- Tyre wear inspection.
- Fluids visual leak check. A leak in any system must be repaired and the fluid level checked.
- Engine air cleaner filter inspection.
- Brake system inspection.
- Steering and suspension inspection. Visual inspection for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.
- Body hinges and latches, key lock cylinders, folding seat hardware, and rear compartment, bonnet, and console door hinges and latches lubrication. More frequent lubrication may be required when the vehicle is exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth makes them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
- Restraint system component check.
- Fuel system inspection for damage or leaks.
- Exhaust system and nearby heat shields inspection for loose or damaged components.
- Accelerator pedal check for damage, high effort, or binding.
- Bonnet/Deck lid/Tailgate/Lift glass Support Gas Strut Service: Visually inspect gas strut, if equipped, for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the gas strut. Contact your authorised repairer if service is required.
- Road Test. Check all systems for correct function/performance.
- To maintain air conditioning efficiency, have an authorised repairer check the system at least once each year.
- Automatic transmission shift lock control function check.
- Parking brake and automatic P (Park) mechanism check.

- Underbody flushing service.
- Tyre sealant and compressor kit (if equipped with tyre sealant and compressor kit), check sealant expiration date.

### **Additional Maintenance Every 30 000 km or 2 Years**

In addition to the items listed under “Inspection every 15 000 km or 1 year” the following items should be carried out every 30 000 km or 2 years (whichever occurs first):

- Passenger compartment air filter — replace (if applicable).
- Engine Air Filter Replacement.
- All-wheel-drive vehicles only: During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid

will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

- Automatic transmission fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

### **Replace Every 2 Years**

Replace brake fluid every 2 years.

Note: All vehicles with rear-wheel drive — change driveline axle oil every 30 000 km, if vehicle is used for towing purposes.

### **Additional Maintenance Every 150 000 km or if Necessary**

- Spark plugs — replace
- Automatic transmission fluid and filter change
- Four-wheel drive only: Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation.

Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

### **Additional Maintenance Every 250 000 km or Every Five Years, Whichever Occurs First**

- Engine cooling system drain and refill (or every five years, whichever occurs first).

## 11-4 Service and Maintenance

---

### Conditions Requiring More Frequent Maintenance (Severe Service)

- Extreme temperatures
- Heavy city traffic
- Hilly or mountainous terrain
- Dusty, muddy or off-road conditions
- Commercial use or trailer towing
- Most trips less than 6 km

Note: All vehicles with rear-wheel drive — change driveline axle oil every 30 000 km, if vehicle is used for towing purposes.

## Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

### Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

| Usage  | Fluid/Lubricant   |
|--|---|
| Engine Oil   | Use only engine oil licensed to the dexos2 specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos2 Synthetic Blend is recommended. See <i>Engine Oil on page 10-6</i> . |
| Engine Coolant   | 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See <i>Engine Coolant on page 10-12</i> .  |
| Fuel Additive  | Fuel System Treatment PLUS (Part No. 88861013).   |
| Hydraulic Brake System   | DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19299818).   |
| Windscreen Washer  | Automotive windscreen washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.  |
| Hydraulic Power Steering System  | DEXRON <sup>®</sup> -VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.   |
| Automatic Transmission   | DEXRON <sup>®</sup> -VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.   |
| Chassis Lubrication  | Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.  |
| Key Lock Cylinders   | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241).  |
| Bonnet Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor and Release Pawl | Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 89021668) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.   |

## 11-6 Service and Maintenance

---

| Usage                                 | Fluid/Lubricant  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Bonnet, Door, and Folding Seat Hinges | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241).   |
| Power Tailgate Actuator Ball Joint    | Multi-Purpose Lubricant (GM Part No. 89021668).  |
| Weatherstrip Conditioning             | Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. 12345579). |

### Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

| Part                                     | GM Part Number | ACDelco Part Number |
|--|----------------|---------------------|
| Engine Air Cleaner/Filter                | 20897358       | A3147C              |
| Engine Oil Filter                        | 89017525       | PF63                |
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter Element | 13271191       | CF176               |
| Spark Plugs                              | 12622561       | 41-109              |
| Wiper Blades                             |                |                     |
| Driver Side - 65.0 cm (25.6 in)          | 22870539       | -                   |
| Passenger Side - 42.5 cm (16.7 in)       | 22870540       | -                   |
| Rear - 30.0 cm (11.8 in)                 | 20825882       | -                   |







## Technical Data

### Vehicle Identification

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ..... | 12-1 |
| Engine Identification .....               | 12-1 |
| Service Parts Identification Label .....  | 12-1 |

### Vehicle Data

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| Capacities and Specifications ..... | 12-2 |
| Engine Drive Belt Routing ...       | 12-4 |

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

## Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications* on page 12-2 for the vehicle's engine code.

### Service Parts Identification Label

This label, on the inside of the rear side cargo management cover, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

### Vehicle Data

#### Capacities and Specifications

| Application  | Capacities  |           |
|--|---|-----------|
|  | Metric  | English   |
| Air Conditioning Refrigerant   | For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the bonnet. See your dealer for more information. |           |
| Engine Cooling System  |   |           |
| 3.6L V6 Engine   | 12.8 L  | 13.5 qt   |
| Engine Oil with Filter   | 5.7 L   | 6.0 qt    |
| Fuel Tank  | 79.5 L  | 21.0 gal  |
| Wheel Nut Torque   | 190 N•m   | 140 lb ft |
| All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling. |   |           |

#### Engine Specifications

| Engine        | VIN Code | Horsepower                                 | Torque   | Spark Plug Gap                    |
|---------------|----------|--|--|-----------------------------------|
| 3.6L V6 (LFX) | 3        | 230 kW (308 hp)@<br>6800 min <sup>-1</sup> | 359 N•m (265 lb ft)<br>@2400 min <sup>-1</sup> | 0.95–1.10 mm (0.037–<br>0.043 in) |

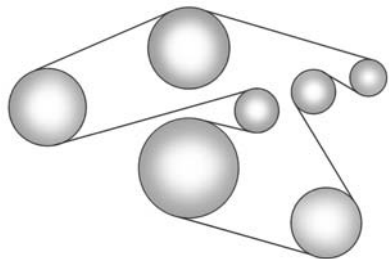
**Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information**

|                         | <b>Equivalent Inertia Mass</b>   | <b>Urban</b> | <b>Extra-Urban</b> | <b>Combined</b> |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Carbon Dioxide (g/km)   | Normal Mode<br>2040 kg (4500 lb) | 378          | 200                | 268             |
|                         | ECO Mode 2040 kg<br>(4500 lb)    | 350          | 191                | 252             |
| Fuel Economy (L/100 km) | Normal Mode<br>2040 kg (4500 lb) | 16.3         | 8.6                | 11.5            |
|                         | ECO Mode 2040 kg<br>(4500 lb)    | 15.1         | 8.2                | 10.8            |

## 12-4 Technical Data

---

### Engine Drive Belt Routing



## Customer Information

### Customer Information

Declaration of Conformity . . . . 13-1

### Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and

Privacy . . . . . 13-1

Infotainment System . . . . . 13-2

Radio Frequency

Identification (RFID) . . . . . 13-2

## Customer Information Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC.

These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

## Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

### Event Data Recorders

#### Data Storage Modules in the Vehicle

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events, and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems, or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g., filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g., number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Dysfunctions and defects in important system components.

## 13-2 Customer Information

---

- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g., inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental concerns (e.g., temperature).

This data is exclusively technical and helps identify and correct errors as well as optimise vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with this data.

If services are used (e.g., repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these dealers. After an error has been corrected, the data is deleted from the error storage module or constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which this technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person — possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g., vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

### Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

### Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Cadillac vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Cadillac system containing personal information.

- A**
- Accessories and Modifications ..... 10-2
  - Accessory Power ..... 9-18
  - Active Emergency Braking System ..... 1-16, 9-48
  - Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 9-34
  - Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) ..... 6-4
  - Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light ..... 5-24
  - Add-On Electrical Equipment ..... 9-64
  - Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal ..... 9-13
  - Adjustments
    - Lumbar, Front Seats ..... 3-4
    - Thigh Support ..... 3-4
  - Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine ..... 10-9
  - Air Filter, Passenger Compartment ..... 8-8
  - Air Vents ..... 8-7
  - Airbag System
    - Check ..... 3-28
    - How Does an Airbag Restrain? ..... 3-23
    - What Makes an Airbag Inflate? ..... 3-23
    - What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? ..... 3-23
    - When Should an Airbag Inflate? ..... 3-22
    - Where Are the Airbags? ..... 3-20
  - Airbags
    - Adding Equipment to the Vehicle ..... 3-27
    - Light On-Off ..... 5-14
    - On-Off Light ..... 5-14
    - On-Off Switch ..... 3-25
    - Readiness Light ..... 5-13
    - Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles ..... 3-27
    - System Check ..... 3-19
  - Alarm
    - Vehicle Security ..... 2-15
  - Alert
    - Side Blind Zone (SBZA) ..... 9-50
  - All-Wheel Drive ..... 9-25, 10-22
  - Anti-theft Locking System ..... 2-17
  - Antilock Brake System (ABS) ..... 9-26
  - Warning Light ..... 5-19
  - Appearance Care
    - Exterior ..... 10-78
    - Interior ..... 10-83
  - Armrest Storage ..... 4-2
  - Ashtrays ..... 5-7
  - Assistance Systems for Driving ..... 9-45
  - Assistance Systems for Parking and Reversing ..... 9-43
  - Automatic
    - Dimming Mirrors ..... 2-20
    - Door Locks ..... 2-10
    - Transmission ..... 9-21
    - Transmission Fluid ..... 10-9
  - Automatic Transmission
    - Manual Mode ..... 9-23
    - Shift Lock Control
      - Function Check ..... 10-23



**B**

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Battery .....                         | 10-21 |
| Exterior Lighting Battery Saver ..... | 6-11  |
| Jump Starting .....                   | 10-70 |
| Load Management .....                 | 6-10  |
| Power Protection .....                | 6-11  |
| Voltage and Charging Messages .....   | 5-28  |
| Blade Replacement, Wiper ...          | 10-23 |
| Bonnet .....                          | 10-4  |
| Brake                                 |       |
| Pedal and Adjustable Throttle .....   | 9-13  |
| System Warning Light .....            | 5-18  |
| Brakes .....                          | 10-19 |
| Antilock .....                        | 9-26  |
| Assist .....                          | 9-28  |
| Fluid .....                           | 10-20 |
| Parking .....                         | 9-27  |
| System Messages .....                 | 5-28  |
| Braking .....                         | 9-2   |
| Braking System                        |       |
| Active Emergency .....                | 1-16  |

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| Bulb Replacement .....                        | 10-31        |
| Halogen Bulbs .....                           | 10-25        |
| Headlamp Aiming .....                         | 10-25        |
| Headlamps .....                               | 10-25, 10-26 |
| High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting ..... | 10-26        |
| Indicator Lamps .....                         | 10-29        |
| License Plate Lamps .....                     | 10-30        |
| Reversing Lamps .....                         | 10-30        |
| Buying New Tyres .....                        | 10-50        |

**C**

|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Capacities and Specifications .....  | 12-2 |
| Carbon Monoxide                      |      |
| Engine Exhaust .....                 | 9-20 |
| Tailgate .....                       | 2-11 |
| Winter Driving .....                 | 9-6  |
| Cargo                                |      |
| Cover .....                          | 4-3  |
| Management System .....              | 4-5  |
| Tie-Downs .....                      | 4-5  |
| Cargo Lamp .....                     | 6-9  |
| Cargo Net .....                      | 4-9  |
| Cautions, Danger, and Warnings ..... | iii  |

|                                  |            |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| Centre Console Storage .....     | 4-3        |
| Chains, Tyre .....               | 10-53      |
| Charging System Light .....      | 5-15       |
| Check                            |            |
| Engine Light .....               | 5-15       |
| Child Restraints                 |            |
| Infants and Young Children ..... | 3-31       |
| ISOFIX .....                     | 3-40       |
| Older Children .....             | 3-29       |
| Securing .....                   | 3-41, 3-42 |
| Systems .....                    | 3-33       |
| Cigarette Lighter .....          | 5-7        |
| Circuit Breakers .....           | 10-32      |
| Cleaning                         |            |
| Exterior Care .....              | 10-78      |
| Interior Care .....              | 10-83      |
| Climate Control Systems          |            |
| Dual Automatic .....             | 8-1        |
| Rear .....                       | 8-6        |
| Clock .....                      | 5-5        |
| Cluster, Instrument .....        | 5-9        |
| Compact Spare Tyre .....         | 10-69      |
| Compartments                     |            |
| Storage .....                    | 4-1        |

Compass  
 Messages ..... 5-29  
 Compressor Kit, Tyre  
 Sealant ..... 10-56  
 Conformity  
 Declaration of ..... 13-1  
 Control  
 Traction and Electronic  
 Stability ..... 9-29  
 Control of a Vehicle ..... 9-2  
 Convenience Net ..... 4-11  
 Convex Mirrors ..... 2-19  
 Coolant  
 Engine ..... 10-12  
 Engine Temperature  
 Gauge ..... 5-12  
 Engine Temperature  
 Warning Light ..... 5-21  
 Cooling System ..... 10-11  
 Engine Messages ..... 5-30  
 Courtesy Lamps ..... 6-9  
 Cover  
 Cargo ..... 4-3  
 Engine ..... 10-6

Cruise Control ..... 9-32  
 Light ..... 5-25  
 Messages ..... 5-29  
 Cruise Control, Active ..... 9-34  
 Cupholders ..... 4-2

**D**

Danger, Warnings, and  
 Cautions ..... iii  
 Daytime Running  
 Lamps (DRL) ..... 6-4  
 Declaration of Conformity ..... 13-1  
 Defensive Driving ..... 9-2  
 Delayed Locking ..... 2-9  
 Dome Lamps ..... 6-9  
 Door  
 Ajar Messages ..... 5-30  
 Delayed Locking ..... 2-9  
 Locks ..... 2-8  
 Power Locks ..... 2-9  
 Rear Seat Pass-Through ..... 3-11  
 Drive Belt Routing, Engine ..... 12-4  
 Drive Systems  
 All-Wheel Drive ..... 9-25, 10-22  
 Driver Assistance Systems ..... 9-42

Driver Information  
 Centre (DIC) ..... 5-25  
 Driving  
 Assistance Systems ..... 9-45  
 Characteristics and  
 Towing Tips ..... 9-57  
 Defensive ..... 9-2  
 For Better Fuel Economy ..... 1-18  
 Highway Hypnosis ..... 9-5  
 Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 9-5  
 If the Vehicle is Stuck ..... 9-8  
 Loss of Control ..... 9-4  
 Off-Road Recovery ..... 9-3  
 Vehicle Load Limits ..... 9-8  
 Wet Roads ..... 9-4  
 Winter ..... 9-6  
 Dual Automatic Climate  
 Control System ..... 8-1

**E**

ECO Button ..... 9-24  
 Economy Mode  
 Fuel ..... 9-24  
 Electric Parking Brake Light ... 5-18  
 Electrical Equipment,  
 Add-On ..... 9-64



Fuel (cont'd)  
 Low Fuel Warning Light ..... 5-23  
 Recommended ..... 9-54  
 System Messages ..... 5-31  
 Fuel Economy Mode ..... 9-24

Fuses  
 Engine Compartment  
   Fuse Block ..... 10-33  
 Fuses and Circuit  
   Breakers ..... 10-32  
 Instrument Panel Fuse  
   Block ..... 10-35  
 Rear Compartment Fuse  
   Block ..... 10-37

**G**

Gauges  
 Engine Coolant  
   Temperature ..... 5-12  
 Fuel ..... 5-11  
 Mileometer ..... 5-10  
 Rev Counter ..... 5-11  
 Speedometer ..... 5-10  
 Trip Odometer ..... 5-11  
 Warning Lights and  
   Indicators ..... 5-8

General Information  
 Service and Maintenance ..... 11-1  
 Towing ..... 9-57  
 Vehicle Care ..... 10-2  
 Glove Box ..... 4-1

**H**

Halogen Bulbs ..... 10-25  
 Hazard Lights ..... 6-7  
 Head Restraints ..... 3-2  
 Headlamp Levelling Control .... 6-5  
 Headlamps ..... 10-26  
   Adaptive Forward  
     Lighting (AFL) ..... 6-4  
   Aiming ..... 10-25  
   Bulb Replacement ..... 10-25  
   Daytime Running  
     Lamps (DRL) ..... 6-4  
   Flash-to-Pass ..... 6-3  
   High Intensity Discharge  
     (HID) Lighting ..... 10-26  
   Indicator Lamps ..... 10-29  
   Lamps On Reminder ..... 5-24  
   Main-Beam On Light ..... 5-23

Headlamps (cont'd)  
 Main/Dipped Beam Changer ... 6-3  
 Twilight Sentinel ..... 6-6  
 Washer ..... 5-5

Heated  
 Rear Seats ..... 3-10  
 Steering Wheel ..... 5-2

Heated and Ventilated Front  
 Seats ..... 3-8

Heated Mirrors ..... 2-20

Heater  
 Engine ..... 9-17

High-Speed Operation ..... 10-43  
 Highway Hypnosis ..... 9-5  
 Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 9-5  
 Hill Start Assist (HSA) ..... 9-28  
 Horn ..... 5-3

How to Wear Safety Belts  
 Properly ..... 3-13

**I**

Ignition Positions ..... 9-14  
 Immobiliser ..... 2-17

|                                 |      |
|---------------------------------|------|
| Indicator                       |      |
| Vehicle Ahead .....             | 5-20 |
| Infants and Young Children,     |      |
| Restraints .....                | 3-31 |
| Infotainment .....              | 7-1  |
| Infotainment System .....       | 13-2 |
| Instrument Cluster .....        | 5-9  |
| Interior Rearview Mirrors ..... | 2-21 |
| Introduction .....              | iii  |
| ISOFIX Child Restraint          |      |
| Systems .....                   | 3-40 |

**J**

|                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| Jump Starting ..... | 10-70 |
|---------------------|-------|

**K**

|                             |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Key and Lock Messages ..... | 5-32 |
| Keyless Entry               |      |
| Remote (RKE) System .....   | 2-3  |
| Keys .....                  | 2-1  |

**L**

|                             |       |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Lamps                       |       |
| Cargo .....                 | 6-9   |
| Courtesy .....              | 6-9   |
| Daytime Running (DRL) ..... | 6-4   |
| Dome .....                  | 6-9   |
| Exterior Controls .....     | 6-1   |
| Exterior Lighting Battery   |       |
| Saver .....                 | 6-11  |
| Front Fog .....             | 6-8   |
| Malfunction Indicator ..... | 5-15  |
| Messages .....              | 5-32  |
| Number Plate .....          | 10-30 |
| On Reminder .....           | 5-24  |
| Reading .....               | 6-10  |
| Rear Fog .....              | 6-8   |
| Lane Departure              |       |
| Warning (LDW) .....         | 9-51  |
| Lane Departure Warning      |       |
| Light .....                 | 5-19  |
| Lap-Shoulder Belt .....     | 3-14  |
| Levelling Control           |       |
| Headlamp .....              | 6-5   |
| Light                       |       |
| Adaptive Forward Lighting   |       |
| (AFL) Light .....           | 5-24  |

|                              |      |
|------------------------------|------|
| Lighter, Cigarette .....     | 5-7  |
| Lighting                     |      |
| Adaptive Forward .....       | 6-4  |
| Entry .....                  | 6-10 |
| Exit .....                   | 6-10 |
| Illumination Control .....   | 6-9  |
| Lights                       |      |
| Airbag On-Off .....          | 5-14 |
| Airbag Readiness .....       | 5-13 |
| Antilock Brake System        |      |
| (ABS) Warning .....          | 5-19 |
| Brake System Warning .....   | 5-18 |
| Charging System .....        | 5-15 |
| Cruise Control .....         | 5-25 |
| Electric Parking Brake ..... | 5-18 |
| Engine Coolant               |      |
| Temperature Warning .....    | 5-21 |
| Engine Oil Pressure .....    | 5-22 |
| Flash-to-Pass .....          | 6-3  |
| Fog Lamp, Rear .....         | 5-24 |
| Front Fog Lamp .....         | 5-24 |
| Fuel Economy .....           | 5-22 |
| Lane Departure Warning ..... | 5-19 |
| Low Fuel Warning .....       | 5-23 |
| Main-Beam On .....           | 5-23 |
| Main/Dipped Beam Changer ... | 6-3  |

Lights (cont'd)

- Seat Belt Reminders ..... 5-12
- Security ..... 5-23
- Service Electric Parking
  - Brake ..... 5-19
- StabiliTrak® OFF ..... 5-20
- Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® ..... 5-21
- Traction Off ..... 5-20
- Tyre Pressure ..... 5-22
- Lights, Hazard ..... 6-7
- Limited-Slip Rear Axle ..... 9-31
- Locking Systems, Anti-theft ..... 2-17
- Locks
  - Automatic Door ..... 2-10
  - Delayed Locking ..... 2-9
  - Door ..... 2-8
  - Lockout Protection ..... 2-10
  - Power Door ..... 2-9
  - Safety ..... 2-10
- Loss of Control ..... 9-4
- Low Fuel Warning Light ..... 5-23
- Lumbar Adjustment ..... 3-4
  - Front Seats ..... 3-4

**M**

- Main-Beam On Light ..... 5-23
- Maintenance
  - Records ..... 11-7
- Maintenance Schedule
  - Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 11-5
  - Scheduled Maintenance ..... 11-1
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 5-15
- Manual Mode ..... 9-23
- Memory Features ..... 1-8
- Memory Seats ..... 3-6
- Messages
  - Airbag System ..... 5-36
  - Battery Voltage and Charging ..... 5-28
  - Brake System ..... 5-28
  - Compass ..... 5-29
  - Door Ajar ..... 5-30
  - Engine Cooling System ..... 5-30
  - Engine Oil ..... 5-31
  - Engine Power ..... 5-31
  - Fuel System ..... 5-31
  - Key and Lock ..... 5-32
  - Lamp ..... 5-32
  - Object Detection System ..... 5-33

Messages (cont'd)

- Ride Control System ..... 5-35
- Security ..... 5-36
- Service Vehicle ..... 5-36
- Starting the Vehicle ..... 5-36
- Transmission ..... 5-37
- Tyre ..... 5-37
- Vehicle ..... 5-28
- Vehicle Reminder ..... 5-38
- Vehicle Speed ..... 5-38
- Washer Fluid ..... 5-38
- Mileometer ..... 5-10
- Trip ..... 5-11
- Mirrors
  - Automatic Dimming ..... 2-20
  - Automatic Dimming
    - Rearview ..... 2-21
  - Convex ..... 2-19
  - Folding ..... 2-19
  - Heated ..... 2-20
  - Manual Rearview ..... 2-21
  - Power ..... 2-19
  - Tilt in Reverse ..... 2-20
- Mirrors, Interior Rearview ..... 2-21
- Monitor System, Tyre
  - Pressure ..... 10-43

**N**

- Net
  - Cargo ..... 4-9
- Net, Convenience ..... 4-11
- New Vehicle Run-In ..... 9-13

**O**

- Object Detection System
  - Messages ..... 5-33
- Off-Road
  - Recovery ..... 9-3
- Oil
  - Engine ..... 10-6
  - Engine Oil Life System ..... 10-9
  - Messages ..... 5-31
  - Pressure Light ..... 5-22
- Older Children, Restraints ..... 3-29
- Outlets
  - Power ..... 5-6
- Overheating, Engine ..... 10-16

**P**

- Park
  - Shifting Into ..... 9-18
  - Shifting Out of ..... 9-19
- Parking
  - Brake ..... 9-27
  - Brake and P (Park)
    - Mechanism Check ..... 10-23
  - Over Things That Burn ..... 9-20
- Parking or Reversing
  - Assistance Systems ..... 9-43
- Passenger Compartment Air
  - Filter ..... 8-8
- Personalisation
  - Vehicle ..... 5-38
- Petrol Engine, Starting ..... 9-15
- Power
  - Door Locks ..... 2-9
  - Mirrors ..... 2-19
  - Outlets ..... 5-6
  - Protection, Battery ..... 6-11
  - Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 9-18
  - Seat Adjustment ..... 3-3
  - Steering Fluid ..... 10-17
  - Windows ..... 2-21

**Pregnancy, Using Safety**

- Belts ..... 3-17
- Privacy
  - Radio Frequency
    - Identification (RFID) ..... 13-2

**R**

- Radio Frequency
  - Identification (RFID) ..... 13-2
- Reading Lamps ..... 6-10
- Rear Axle
  - Limited-Slip ..... 9-31
- Rear Climate Control System ... 8-6
- Rear Fog Lamp Light ..... 5-24
- Rear Fog Lamps ..... 6-8
- Rear Seat
  - Pass-Through Door ..... 3-11
- Rear Seats ..... 3-9
  - Heated ..... 3-10
- Rear Window Washer/Wiper .... 5-4
- Rearview Mirrors ..... 2-21
  - Automatic Dimming ..... 2-21
- Reclining Seat Backrests ..... 3-5
- Recommended
  - Fuel ..... 9-54

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 11-5

Records  
Maintenance ..... 11-7

Recreational Vehicle  
Towing ..... 10-76

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ..... 2-2, 2-3

Remote Vehicle Start ..... 2-7

Replacement Bulbs ..... 10-31

Replacement Parts  
Airbags ..... 3-28  
Maintenance ..... 11-6

Replacing Airbag System ..... 3-28

Replacing Safety Belt  
System Parts after a Crash ... 3-18

Restraints  
Where to Put ..... 3-34

Retained Accessory  
Power (RAP) ..... 9-18

Rev Counter ..... 5-11

Reverse Tilt Mirrors ..... 2-20

Ride Control Systems  
Limited Slip Rear Axle ..... 9-31  
Messages ..... 5-35  
Selective ..... 9-31

Roads  
Driving, Wet ..... 9-4

Roof  
Sunroof ..... 2-24

Roof Rack System ..... 4-11

Rotation, Tyres ..... 10-48

Routing, Engine Drive Belt ..... 12-4

Running the Vehicle While  
Parked ..... 9-21

Running-In, New Vehicle ..... 9-13

**S**

Safety Belts ..... 3-11  
Care ..... 3-18  
Extender ..... 3-17  
How to Wear Safety Belts  
Properly ..... 3-13  
Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 3-14  
Replacing after a Crash ..... 3-18  
Use During Pregnancy ..... 3-17

Safety Locks ..... 2-10

Safety System Check ..... 3-17

Scheduled Maintenance ..... 11-1

Sealant Kit, Tyre ..... 10-56

Seat Belts  
Reminders ..... 5-12

Seats  
Head Restraints ..... 3-2  
Heated and Ventilated Front ... 3-8  
Heated, Rear ..... 3-10  
Lumbar Adjustment, Front ..... 3-4  
Memory ..... 3-6  
Power Adjustment, Front ..... 3-3  
Rear ..... 3-9  
Reclining Seat Backrests ..... 3-5

Securing Child  
Restraints ..... 3-41, 3-42

Security  
Light ..... 5-23  
Messages ..... 5-36  
Vehicle ..... 2-15  
Vehicle Alarm ..... 2-15

Selective Ride Control ..... 9-31

Service  
Accessories and  
Modifications ..... 10-2  
Doing Your Own Work ..... 10-3  
Engine Soon Light ..... 5-15  
Maintenance Records ..... 11-7



|  |           |  |  |
|--|-----------|--|--|
| Service (cont'd)                                     |           |  |  |
| Maintenance, General                                 |           |  |  |
| Information .....                                    | 11-1      |  |  |
| Parts Identification Label .....                     | 12-1      |  |  |
| Vehicle Messages .....                               | 5-36      |  |  |
| Service Electric Parking                             |           |  |  |
| Brake Light .....                                    | 5-19      |  |  |
| Servicing the Airbag .....                           | 3-27      |  |  |
| Shift Lock Control Function                          |           |  |  |
| Check, Automatic                                     |           |  |  |
| Transmission .....                                   | 10-23     |  |  |
| Shifting   |           |  |  |
| Into Park .....                                      | 9-18      |  |  |
| Out of Park .....                                    | 9-19      |  |  |
| Side Blind Zone                                      |           |  |  |
| Alert (SBZA) .....                                   | 9-50      |  |  |
| Signals, Turn and                                    |           |  |  |
| Lane-Change .....                                    | 6-7       |  |  |
| Spare Tyre   |           |  |  |
| Compact .....  | 10-69     |  |  |
| Specifications and                                   |           |  |  |
| Capacities .....                                     | 12-2      |  |  |
| Speedometer .....                                    | 5-10      |  |  |
| StabiliTrak  |           |  |  |
| OFF Light .....                                      | 5-20      |  |  |
| Start Assist, Hills .....                            | 9-28      |  |  |
| Start Vehicle, Remote .....                          | 2-7       |  |  |
| Starter Switch Check .....                           | 10-22     |  |  |
| Starting the Petrol Engine .....                     | 9-15      |  |  |
| Starting the Vehicle                                 |           |  |  |
| Messages .....                                       | 5-36      |  |  |
| Steering .....                                       | 9-3       |  |  |
| Fluid, Power .....                                   | 10-17     |  |  |
| Heated Wheel .....                                   | 5-2       |  |  |
| Wheel Adjustment .....                               | 5-2       |  |  |
| Wheel Controls .....                                 | 5-2       |  |  |
| Storage Areas  |           |  |  |
| Armrest .....  | 4-2       |  |  |
| Cargo Cover .....                                    | 4-3       |  |  |
| Cargo Management System .....                        | 4-5       |  |  |
| Centre Console .....                                 | 4-3       |  |  |
| Convenience Net .....                                | 4-11      |  |  |
| Front .....  | 4-2       |  |  |
| Glove Box .....                                      | 4-1       |  |  |
| Roof Rack System .....                               | 4-11      |  |  |
| Storage Compartments .....                           | 4-1       |  |  |
| Storing the Tyre Sealant<br>and Compressor Kit ..... | 10-63     |  |  |
| Stuck Vehicle .....                                  | 9-8       |  |  |
| Sun Visors .....                                     | 2-24      |  |  |
| Sunroof .....  | 2-24      |  |  |
| Switches   |           |  |  |
| Airbag On-Off .....                                  | 3-25      |  |  |
| Symbols .....  | iv        |  |  |
| System   |           |  |  |
| Active Emergency Braking .....                       | 9-48      |  |  |
| Forward Collision                                    |           |  |  |
| Alert (FCA) .....                                    | 9-45      |  |  |
| Infotainment .....                                   | 7-1, 13-2 |  |  |
| Roof Rack .....                                      | 4-11      |  |  |
| Systems  |           |  |  |
| Driver Assistance .....                              | 9-42      |  |  |
| <b>T</b>   |           |  |  |
| Tailgate   |           |  |  |
| Carbon Monoxide .....                                | 2-11      |  |  |
| Theft-Deterrent Systems .....                        | 2-18      |  |  |
| Immobiliser .....                                    | 2-17      |  |  |
| Thigh Support Adjustment .....                       | 3-4       |  |  |
| Throttle, Adjustable .....                           | 9-13      |  |  |
| Time .....   | 5-5       |  |  |
| Towing   |           |  |  |
| Driving Characteristics .....                        | 9-57      |  |  |
| Equipment .....                                      | 9-61      |  |  |
| General Information .....                            | 9-57      |  |  |
| Recreational Vehicle .....                           | 10-76     |  |  |
| Trailer .....  | 9-60      |  |  |
| Trailer Sway Control (TSC) .....                     | 9-64      |  |  |
| Vehicle .....  | 10-74     |  |  |

Traction  
 Control System (TCS)/  
   StabiliTrak® Light ..... 5-21  
 Limited-Slip Rear Axle ..... 9-31  
 Off Light ..... 5-20  
 Selective Ride Control ..... 9-31  
 Traction Control/Electronic  
   Stability Control ..... 9-29  
 Trailer  
   Sway Control (TSC) ..... 9-64  
   Towing ..... 9-60  
 Transmission  
   Automatic ..... 9-21  
   Fluid, Automatic ..... 10-9  
   Messages ..... 5-37  
 Trip Odometer ..... 5-11  
 Turn and Lane-Change  
   Signals ..... 6-7  
 Twilight Sentinel ..... 6-6  
 Tyres  
   Buying New Tyres ..... 10-50  
   Chains ..... 10-53  
   Changing ..... 10-63  
   Compact Spare ..... 10-69  
   Different Size ..... 10-52  
   If a Tyre Goes Flat ..... 10-54

Tyres (cont'd)  
 Inflation Monitor System .... 10-45  
 Inspection ..... 10-48  
 Messages ..... 5-37  
 Pressure ..... 10-43  
 Pressure Light ..... 5-22  
 Pressure Monitor System ... 10-43  
 Rotation ..... 10-48  
 Sealant and  
   Compressor Kit ..... 10-56  
 Sealant and Compressor  
   Kit, Storing ..... 10-63  
 Wheel Alignment and  
   Tyre Balance ..... 10-52  
 Wheel Replacement ..... 10-53  
 When It Is Time for New  
   Tyres ..... 10-49  
 Winter ..... 10-41

**U**

Using This Manual ..... iii

**V**

Vehicle  
 Alarm System ..... 2-15  
 Control ..... 9-2  
 Identification  
   Number (VIN) ..... 12-1  
 Load Limits ..... 9-8  
 Messages ..... 5-28  
 Personalisation ..... 5-38  
 Reminder Messages ..... 5-38  
 Remote Start ..... 2-7  
 Security ..... 2-15  
 Speed Messages ..... 5-38  
 Towing ..... 10-74  
 Vehicle Ahead Indicator ..... 5-20  
 Vehicle Care  
   Storing the Tyre Sealant  
     and Compressor Kit ..... 10-63  
   Tyre Pressure ..... 10-42  
 Ventilation, Air ..... 8-7  
 Visors ..... 2-24

**W**

|                                 |       |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| Warning                         |       |
| Brake System Light .....        | 5-18  |
| Lane Departure (LDW) .....      | 9-51  |
| Warning Lights, Gauges, and     |       |
| Indicators .....                | 5-8   |
| Warnings .....                  | iii   |
| Cautions and Danger .....       | iii   |
| Hazard Lights .....             | 6-7   |
| Washer Fluid .....              | 10-18 |
| Messages .....                  | 5-38  |
| Washer, Headlamps .....         | 5-5   |
| Wheels                          |       |
| Alignment and Tyre              |       |
| Balance .....                   | 10-52 |
| Different Size .....            | 10-52 |
| Replacement .....               | 10-53 |
| When It Is Time for New         |       |
| Tyres .....                     | 10-49 |
| Where to Put the Restraint .... | 3-34  |
| Windows .....                   | 2-21  |
| Power .....                     | 2-21  |
| Windscreen                      |       |
| Wiper/Washer .....              | 5-3   |
| Winter                          |       |
| Driving .....                   | 9-6   |
| Winter Tyres .....              | 10-41 |
| Wiper Blade Replacement ....    | 10-23 |
| Wipers                          |       |
| Rear Washer .....               | 5-4   |